This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world’s books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that’s often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book’s long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

**Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ **Make non-commercial use of the files** We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ **Refrain from automated querying** Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google’s system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ **Maintain attribution** The Google “watermark” you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ **Keep it legal** Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can’t offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book’s appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

**About Google Book Search**

Google’s mission is to organize the world’s information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world’s books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at [http://books.google.com/](http://books.google.com/)
REVISED ARMY REGULATIONS.—VOL. II.
THE QUEEN'S REGULATIONS AND ORDERS FOR THE ARMY.

Adjutant-General’s Office, Horse Guards, 1st January 1863.
Royal 8vo. edition, cloth boards. Price 3s. 6d.
Do. 8vo. interleaved, 4s. 6d.
POCKET EDITION, demy 16mo., in leather, with clasp. Price 1s.

REGULATIONS FOR THE DRESS OF GENERAL, STAFF, AND REGIMENTAL OFFICERS OF THE ARMY.

Dated Adjutant-General's Office, Horse Guards, 1864.
122 pp. demy 8vo., cloth boards. Price 2s.

INSTRUCTION, FORMATIONS, AND MOVEMENTS OF CAVALRY, Regulations for the.

Dated Horse Guards, 1st January 1865.
Demy 12mo., cloth boards. Price 3s.

MOVEMENTS AND FORMATIONS OF A DIVISION OR BRIGADE OF CAVALRY, Regulations for the.

Dated Horse Guards, 1st August 1863.
Demy 12mo., cloth boards. Price 3s.

THE SWORD, CARBINE, PISTOL, AND LANCE EXERCISE, WITH STANDING GUN DRILL,

For the use of the Cavalry.
Dated Horse Guards, 1st January 1865.

THE MANUAL AND PLATOON EXERCISES FOR THE SNIDER BREECH-LOADING CAVALRY CARBINE.

Horse Guards, August 1868. Price One Penny.

MANUAL OF ARTILLERY EXERCISES.

Dated Horse Guards, 1st January 1860.
304 pp. demy 8vo., cloth boards, with Plates. Price 2s. 4d.;
Price 1s.
MILITARY BOOKS, published by Authority—continued.

MANUAL OF FIELD ARTILLERY EXERCISES.
Dated Horse Guards, 1st August 1861.
246 pp. demy 8vo., cloth boards, with numerous Diagrams.
Price 5s.; by Post, 5s. 6d.
POCKET EDITION of Ditto. Price 1s. 6d.

THE MANUAL AND PLATOON EXERCISES FOR THE SNIDER BREECH-LOADING ARTILLERY CARBINE.
Crown 16mo., in wrapper. ? Price 2d.

STANDING ORDERS, DRESS REGULATIONS, AND "TRUMPET AND BUGLE SOUNDS, FOR THE ROYAL REGIMENT OF ARTILLERY.
Dated Horse Guards, April 1864.
286 pp. demy 8vo., cloth boards. Price 5s.

FIELD EXERCISE AND EVOLUTIONS OF INFANTRY AS REVISED.
Dated Horse Guards, May 1867.
552 pp. demy 8vo., cloth boards. Price 4s.
POCKET EDITION. Price 1s.

REGULATIONS FOR THE MUSKETRY INSTRUCTION OF THE ARMY.
(Revised Edition, March 1863.)
Adjutant-General’s Office, Horse Guards, 1st February 1867.
Crown 8vo., cloth boards. Price 1s.; interleaved, 1s. 6d.

TEXT BOOK ON THE THEORY OF THE MOTION OF PROJECTILES;
(Revised Edition, January 1868.)
The History, Manufacture, and Explosive Force of Gunpowder; the History of Small Arms; the Method of conducting Experiments; and on Ranges;
FOR THE USE OF OFFICERS SENT TO THE SCHOOLS OF MUSKETRY.
152 pp. crown 8vo., cloth boards, with Plates. Price 2s.; interleaved, 2s. 6d.

A MILITARY SYSTEM OF GYMNASTIC EXERCISES FOR THE USE OF INSTRUCTORS.
BY ARCHIBALD MACCLAREN.
Dated Adjutant-General’s Office, Horse Guards, Feb. 1862.
194 pp. crown 8vo., cloth boards. Price 1s. 6d.
MILITARY BOOKS, published by Authority—continued.

A SYSTEM OF FENCING FOR THE USE OF INSTRUCTORS IN THE ARMY.
By Archibald MacLaren.
Dated Adjutant-General’s Office, Horse Guards, July 1861.
88 pp. crown 8vo., cloth boards. Price 1s.

A SERIES OF EXERCISES FOR THE REGULATION CLUBS.
Date—Horse Guards, July 1863.
20 pp. demy 12mo. Price 3d.

OR

GYMNASTIC EXERCISES, SYSTEM OF FENCING, AND EXERCISES FOR THE REGULATION CLUBS.
In One Book. Price 2s.

THE INFANTRY SWORD EXERCISE.
Horse Guards, 1842.
With Illustrations. Price 6d.

MILITARY TRAIN MANUAL.
Date—Horse Guards, June 1862.
72 pp. demy 8vo. Price 1s.

PURVEYORS’ REGULATIONS.
Regulations and Instructions for guidance of Officers of Purveyors’ Department of the Army.
Date—War Office, 22nd October 1860.
236 pp. demy 8vo. Price 3s.

FORMULARY OF PRESCRIPTIONS FOR USE IN MILITARY HOSPITALS.
Price 1s.

THE REVISED ROYAL CLOTHING WARRANT OF 1865,
For the provision of Clothing and Necessaries for the Army.
War Office, 2nd January 1865. Demy 8vo. Price 1s.

STRENGTH, COMPOSITION, AND ORGANIZATION OF THE ARMY OF GREAT BRITAIN.
Compiled by Captain Martin Petrie, 14th Regt., Topographical Staff.
Prepared at the Topographical and Statistical Department, War Office.
Colonel Sir Henry James, R.E., F.R.S., &c., Director.
Fifth Edition, Corrected according to the Estimates of 1867–8,
By Lieutenant H. M. Hozier, 2nd Life Guards, Topographical Staff.
Printed by Order of the Secretary of State for War.
12mo., cloth boards. Price 1s. 6d.
REGULATIONS

FOR THE

INSTRUCTION, FORMATIONS,

AND

MOVEMENTS

OF THE

CAVALRY.

REVISED AND CORRECTED.

HORSE GUARDS, 1st AUGUST 1869.

Published by Authority.

LONDON:
Printed under the Superintendence of Her Majesty's Stationery Office,
AND SOLD BY
W. CLOWES & SONS, 14, Charing Cross; HARRISON & SONS, 59, Pall Mall;
W. H. ALLEN & CO., 13, Waterloo Place; W. MITCHELL, 39, Charing Cross;
LONGMAN & CO., Paternoster Row; and TRÜBNER & CO., Paternoster Row.
ALSO BY
A. & C. BLACK, Edinburgh.
ALEX. THOM, Abbey Street, and E. PONSONBY, Grafton Street, Dublin.

Price Three Shillings.
GENERAL ORDER.

HORSE GUARDS,
1st August 1869.

The following Revised Regulations for the Instruction, Formations, and Movements of the Cavalry, having received the approval of the Field Marshal Commanding-in-Chief, are published for general information and guidance, and are to be strictly adhered to throughout the service.

By Command of His Royal Highness
The Field Marshal Commanding-in-Chief.

W. PAULET,
Adjutant-General.
# CONTENTS.

## MILITARY EQUITATION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Remarks</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sect. I. Open Manège</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Preparatory Instruction of the Recruit</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Single Ride</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Double Ride</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Training of the Young Horse</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Training of Horses which have been already ridden</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. Elementary Instruction for Field Exercise</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PART THE FIRST.

### INSTRUCTION OF THE CAVALRY SOLDIER ON FOOT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introductory Remarks</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sect. I. Positions</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Club Exercise</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Principle of Dressing</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Facings</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Position in Marching</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Instruction in Single Rank</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. Instruction in Double Ranks</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII. Practice of Field Movements on Foot</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX. Posting of Sentinels</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X. Calculation of Extent of Front</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI. Formation and Inspection of the Troop</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII. To Fire a Feu de Joie</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII. Directions for Funeral Parties</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIV. Foot Parade of the Regiment</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART THE SECOND.

INSTRUCTION OF THE TROOP AND
SQUADRON.

Sect. I. Terms of Formation and Maneuuvre - 89
II. Distances and Intervals - 94
III. Directions for Instructors - 96
IV. Dressing - 97
V. Marching to the Front - 98
VI. Inclining - 100
VII. Passaging and Reining Back - 101
VIII. Wheeling - 101
IX. Movement by Fours - 105
X. Paces - 108
XI. Formation of the Troop - 109
XII. Formation of the Squadron - 110
XIII. Standard - 114
XIV. Marches to the Flanks, Front, and Rear, by Fours,
Sections, Half Sections, and Files - 115
XV. Formations to the Front, Flanks, and Rear, from
Fours, Sections, Half Sections, and Files - 119
XVI. Countermarch, and Reversing the Front of the
Squadron - 124
XVII. Diminution and Increase of Front - 126
XVIII. Advance of the Squadron - 133
XIX. Preparation of the Squadron for Regimental Move-
ment - 135
XX. Instruction of Young Officers - 136
XXI. Linking Horses - 137
XXII. Dismounted Service - 137

PART THE THIRD.

FIELD MOVEMENTS, &c.

Sect. I. Formation of the Regiment - 141
II. Posts and Duties of Officers - 148
III. Commands - 150
IV. Principles of Field Movement - 151
V. Rules for Markers and Dressing - 154
VI. Taking up Points of Formation - 158
VII. March in Line, Direction, and Alignment - 159
VIII. Formation for Attack - 161
IX. The Charge or Attack - 162
X. Inspection or Review of the Regiment - 164
CONTENTS.

V

Sect. XI.

MOVEMENTS FROM LINE.

1. Change Front, Half Right - - - - 171
2. Change Front, to the Right - - - - 172
3. Change Front, Half Right Back - - - - 173
4. Change Front, Right Back - - - - 174
5. Change Front, Half Right, on the Second Squadron - 175
6. Change Front to the Right, on the Second Squadron 176
7. By Fours, Change Position, Half Right - - 177
9. Column of Troops to the Right - - 180
10. Advance in Column of Troops from the Right - 181
11. Column of Troops from the Right in succession by the Rear - - - - 183
12. Advance in Double Column - - - - 183
13. Form Double Column in Rear of the Centre - - 184
14. Column of Troops in Rear of the Right - - 186
15. Quarter Distance Column on the Second Squadron, Right in Front - - - - 187
16. Countermarch on the Centre - - - - 188
17. Line to the Rear by the Wheel about of Troops - 189
18. Advance in Echelon from the Right - - 191
19. Retire by Alternate Squadrons - - - 192
20. Advance by Fours from the Right of Squadrons - 194
21. Retire by Fours from the Right of Squadrons - 195

Sect. XII.

MOVEMENTS FROM QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMN.

Observations on the Objects and Movements of the Quarter Distance and Close Columns - - - 196

No. 1. Deploy on the First Squadron - - - 198
2. Deploy on the Fourth Squadron - - - 199
3. Form Line to the Left on the Fourth Squadron - 201
4. The Column will Change Front to the Right - - 202
5. The Column will reverse its Front - - - 203
6. The Squadrons will Countermarch - - - 204

Sect. XIII.

MOVEMENTS FROM OPEN COLUMN.

Observations on the Objects and Movements of the Open Column - - - - 205

No. 1. Left Wheel into Line - - - - 211
2. Form Line to the Front - - - - 212
No. 3. Form Line to the Front on the Rear Troop - 213
4. Form Line to the Front on the Second Squadron - 214
5. Form Line to the Rear on the Leading Troop - 215
6. Form Line to the Rear on the Rear Troop - 217
7. Form Line to the Rear on the Third Squadron - 218
8. Form Line to the Left on the New Alignment - 219
9. Form Line to the Left on the New Alignment - 220
10. To the Reserve Flank, Right Form Line - 221
11. Form Line to the Right on the Heads of Squadrons - 222
12. Form Line to the Front on Right of Leading Squadron - 223
13. Form Line to the Left on the Right of the First Squadron - 225
14. Rear of the Column to the Front - 226
15. Form Quarter Distance Column - 227
16. Form Line to the Front (from Double Column) - 228
17. Form Line to the Right (Column) - 229

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sect.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XIV.</td>
<td>Skirmishing</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV.</td>
<td>Advanced Guards, Rear Guards, and Patrols</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVI.</td>
<td>Picquets</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVII.</td>
<td>Flags of Truce</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVIII.</td>
<td>Foraging</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIX.</td>
<td>Alarm Posts</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXPLANATORY REFERENCES TO THE PLATES.

Instructor

Dressing to the Right
Dressing to the Left

First Second Third Fourth Fifth Sixth

Successive Maneuvres in one Exercise.

Direction of Movement

Do when Right or Left Shoulder in

about and circling

Scale of 20 30 40 50 60

Length of the Horse 8 feet.

N.B.—The figure expressing a Maneuvre is always shown covering the one which preceded it, when they are both in one place.
MILITARY EQUITATION.

Introductory Remarks.

Military Equitation consists in the skilful and ready application of the Aids by which the Rider guides and controls the Horse in all his paces, and in a settled balance of the body, which enables him to preserve a firm seat in every variety of movement.

The Aids in Horsemanship are—the motions and proper application of the bridle-hand and legs, to direct and determine the turnings and paces of the Horse.

Military Equitation may be divided into three parts:

First. The instruction of the Recruit upon a Trained Horse, from the earliest to the last lessons.

Second. The Training of the Horse.

Third. The practice of the Recruit and Remount Horse, in the elementary parts of Field Exercise, to prepare them for instruction in the Troop or Squadron.

This Science is indispensably requisite for the Military Horseman, in order that, being able to govern his horse by the aid of his legs and bridle-hand, he may have the right hand at full liberty for the use of his weapons; and be capable on all occasions, whether acting singly or in squadron, of performing with ease his various duties.

With this view both men and horses should be constantly practised in the exercise of such Lessons as will enable them either to move in a compact body, or to act singly or independently.

The System of Equitation laid down in the following chapters is calculated to ensure these advantages. The Rider, by the constant attention which is called forth in the practice of these Lessons, will acquire intelligence and confidence; and the Horse, being accustomed to yield to the impulse he receives from the Rider, will be rendered supple, active, and obedient. The health and condition of Men and Horses, as well as a regard for public economy, demand that the greatest care be taken in their instruction and formation, and that their lessons be proportioned to
their health, strength, and ability, so as neither to produce over-
fatigue, nor to injure men or horses by too violent exertion.

The above objects must always be kept in view; and every
instruction must be strictly conformable to the Regulations for
the Field Exercise and Movements of the Cavalry, so that when
Men and Horses are placed in the ranks, they may be fully
competent to enter upon their duties in the Field.

Section I.

OPEN MANÈGE.

1. The use of an open Manège is indispensable in quarters
where there is no riding school. It is also highly desirable that
all Cavalry should be often exercised in Open Manège, to pre-
pare their horses for working steadily in the field with various
objects in sight, which do not occur to distract their attention
in the school; also to prevent men and horses from depending
on the confinement of the walls for correct movements, and to
make the men trust only to the proper application of the Aids.

2. These Manèges may be formed in a barrack yard, by pre-
paring certain portions of ground with fine gravel of sufficient
depth.

3. The length of each Manège should be sixty yards, the
breadth twenty.

Where a larger size is required, and the ground will allow,
an increase of five yards in breadth is to be made for every ten
in length; one Manège will thus contain two good circles or
longes.

4. The corners of the Manèges may be marked by large
stones, stakes of sufficient height, or lance foils; and the same
attention must be paid to making the corners square, as in the
riding school.

5. By increasing the number of these Manèges, and placing
one or two Instructors in each, any number of men and horses
may be worked under the superintendence of the Commanding
Officer or Chief Instructor.

6. But if it is desired that the whole or any part of the
Regiment should be exercised together, by the respective
Officers of Troops, the Rides may be arranged in one or two
parallel lines of Manèges, fifteen yards distant from each other,
and fifteen yards between the two lines; the ends or short sides
of the Manèges forming the front line.
7. The Regiment being formed in Column of Troops in front of the line, takes such distance that the flank of each Troop is opposite to the end of its own Manège. By word of command the whole move from a flank, and form for Riding Drill in their respective Manèges.

8. The whole or any part of the Riding Lesson may then be gone through; the general plan of the exercise being the same for all the Troops; but the Instructors should avoid following the same routine that may be proceeding in the next Manège, in order that the attention of the men may be exclusively directed to their own Officers. The Commanding or Field Officers may, by riding between the lines of the Manèges, superintend the Lessons of all the Troops.

9. Instead of exercising the Horses in Watering Order, along a road, by which the men are apt to acquire lounging and slovenly habits, and the horses to lose their training, the Troops, when practicable, are to be drilled in like manner in the Open Manège; they will thus retain all the advantages of their previous drills, and preserve the freshness of the horse's mouth, and lightness of his forehand, by the use of the Bridoon, or Snaffle-Bridle.

10. It is recommended that those Non-commissioned Officers and men who have been formed at the Riding Establishment, and of whom a favourable report has been made, should be frequently employed in conducting Riding Drills, in order that they may keep up their knowledge of the system, and furnish a useful supply of Assistants for the School when vacancies occur, or upon any sudden augmentation of the Cavalry.

Section II.

PREPARATORY INSTRUCTION OF THE RECRUIT.

When the Recruits shall have been practised in the elementary exercises of Marching, Facing, &c., on foot, and shall have attained a knowledge of the usual military terms and commands, they will commence their lessons in riding.

They may be instructed in small squads of eight or ten, on Trained Horses with stripped Saddles and Bridoons.

Their lessons at first must be short, and at all times gentle. With patience and mild treatment on the part of the Instructor, and with a proper explanation of the use and object of the dif-
ferent Aids, they will make more progress than by harshness and severity.

The Recruits are to be taught to saddle and bridle their horses; and also the proper manner of leading them.

Saddling.

The Saddle is to be placed in the middle of the horse's back; the front of it about the breadth of a hand behind the play of the shoulder.

The Crupper should admit the breadth of the hand between it and the horse's back.

The Numnah to be raised well into the fork over the withers, by putting the arm under it.

Girth—to admit a finger between it and the horse's belly. With a young horse it must be tightened gradually, and not with violence.

Surcingle—to lie flat over, and not tighter than, the girth; the upper rings in a line with the edge of the flap.

Breast-plate. The upper edge of the rosette, or leather, three fingers above the sharp breast-bone. The breadth of the hand between it and the flat of the shoulder, and also between the martingal (when used) and the horse's chest.

Bridling.

The Bridoon is to touch the corners of the mouth, but low enough not to wrinkle them.

The Bit is to be placed in the horse's mouth, so that the mouth-piece be one inch above the lower tusk, and two inches above the corner tooth, in mares. This can only be laid down as a general rule, so much depending on the shape of the horse's mouth.

The Head-stall parallel to, and behind, the cheek-bone.

The Curb to be laid flat and smooth under the jaw, to admit one finger between it and the jaw-bone, and never tighter or looser, with a view to ease the horse's mouth.

The Nose-band beneath the bridoon head-stall, one finger to play between it and the nose.

The Bridoon-rein of such length, that, when held by the middle, in the full of the left hand, with a light feeling of the horse's mouth, it will touch the rider's waist.

Fitting the Stirrup.

The lower edge of the bar is to be two fingers above the upper edge of the heel of the boot.
LEADING THE HORSE.

The position with stirrups, is the same as without, the heels well stretched down and lower than the toes. The foot kept in its place by the play of the ankle and instep, the stirrup being under the ball of the foot.

Leading the Horse.

The reins of the bridoon being taken over the head, are to be held with the right hand, the fore-finger between them, near the rings of the bridoon; the ends of the reins in the left hand, which hangs easy behind the thigh.

When leading through a doorway, the man placing himself in front of his horse, and taking one rein in each hand, close to the rings of the bridoon, steps backwards; taking care that the horse's hips and appointments clear the posts of the door. When the horse is through, he places himself on the near side, as before.

In passing an Officer on his left, he looks towards him; if the Officer is on the off side, the man steps to that side, leading with the left hand, till he has passed about four yards, when he comes to the near side again.

On all occasions of inspections of horses, the man leads from the reverse hand, so that the horse's fore-hand may be seen by the Inspecting Officer.

The squad having led their horses into the riding-school, and formed in line, with a horse's length interval between each file, will receive the word

"Stand at Ease." Each man opposite the near shoulder of the horse, the right arm passed through the bridoon rein, which has been put over the horse's head and hangs on the neck.

"Attention." The position of the man as in Foot-drill, but holding the left bridoon rein near the ring of the bit, with the right hand raised as high as the man's shoulder; toes in a line with the horse's fore-feet; left hand hanging down by the thigh.

"In front of your Horses." A full step forward with the right foot turning to the right-about, on the ball of it, taking the bridoon reins in each hand near the rings of the bit, raising the horse's head to the height of the man's shoulder, six inches from his breast, and making the horse stand even. (In this position a man shows a horse to an Officer when halted in leading past.)

"Dress." When fronting the horses, dress to the left, if the right would be the blank dressed to when mounted.

"Stand to your Horses." A full step forward, with the right foot to the horse's near side, and face left-about on the ball of
the right foot facing the same way as the horse, at the position of "Attention."

Mounting with Stirrups.

"Prepare to Mount." [In Four Motions.] "One." Face to the right on the left heel, place the right foot opposite the stirrup, parallel to the side of the horse; heels six inches apart; take the bridoon rein equally divided in the left hand, and the bit reins in the right hand, placing the little finger of the left between them,* place the left hand below the right on the neck of the horse, about twelve inches from the saddle.

"Two." The right hand draws the reins through the left, and shortens them, so that the left has a light and equal feeling of both reins, on the horse's mouth; the right hand remaining over the left.

"Three." The right hand throws the reins to the off side, takes a lock of the mane, brings it through the left hand, and twists it round the left thumb; the left hand closes firmly on the mane and reins, the right hand now quits the mane, and lays hold of the left stirrup, with the fingers to the rear.

"Four." The left foot is raised, and put into the stirrup, as far as the ball of it; the right hand is placed on the cantle, and the left knee against the saddle, on the surcingle; the left heel is to be drawn back, in order to avoid touching the horse's side with the toe.

"Mount." [In three Motions.] "One." By a spring of the right foot from the instep, rise in the stirrup; bring both heels together; knees firm against the saddle; heels drawn back a little, the body erect, and partly supported by the right hand.

"Two." The right hand moves from the cantle to the pommeI, and supports the body while the right leg passes clear over the horse's quarters to the off side; the right knee closes on the saddle, and the body comes gently into it.

"Three." The left hand quits the mane, and the right the pommeI, the bridle hand takes its proper position; the right hand drops by the thigh, without stiffness, the back of the hand outwards.

The right foot takes the stirrup, without the help of hand or eye.

"Prepare to Dismount." [In Three Motions.] "One." The right hand takes the rein above the left; the right foot quits the stirrup.

* The bridoon is to be taken in the same manner as the bit reins when used singly.
"Two." The right hand holding the rein, the left slides forward upon it, about twelve inches from the saddle, feeling the horse's mouth very lightly.

"Three." The right hand drops the reins to the off side, takes a lock of the mane, brings it through the left hand, and twists it round the thumb, the fingers of the left hand closing on it; the right hand is then placed on the pommel; the body erect.

"Dismount." [In Four Motions.] "One." Supporting the body with the right hand and left foot, the right leg is brought gently (without touching either the horse's hind quarters or the saddle) to the near side; heels close; the right hand on the cantle, to preserve the balance of the body as in mounting.

"Two." The body is gently lowered, until the right toe touches the ground.

"Three." Resting on the right foot, the left stiurrip is quitted, and the left foot is placed in a line with the horse's fore-feet; the hands remain as in the former motion.

"Four." Both hands quit their hold; the man faces to the left on the left heel, and brings the body square to the front. As he is turning, the right hand lays hold of the bridoon rein near the ring of the bit, and raises the horse's head as high as the man's shoulder.

To Dismount with Carbine Slung.

In preparing to dismount, the Carbine is to be placed behind the back to the near side, hanging by the swivel muzzle downwards.

To Mount with Carbine Slung.

The Carbine to be first passed over the saddle with the muzzle first and downwards.

To Mount on the Off Side.

After rising in the stirrup, the sword to be thrown well behind the left leg; when mounted, the sword to be brought to the near side.

To Dismount Off Side.

The sword to be placed across the saddle in front, with the point to the off side.
INSTRUCTION OF THE RECRUIT.

Mounting and Dismounting without Stirrups.

"Without Stirrups—Prepare to Mount." Face to the right, step six inches to the right, and close the left heel; the reins in the full of the left hand, on the pommel, the right hand on the cantle.

"Mount." Bend both knees, spring from the insteps, by which the body is raised to the centre of the saddle, rather leaning over it; by a second spring of the arms raise the body till the arms are straight.

Carry the leg over the horse, and fall lightly into the saddle, the right hand being carried from the cantle to the pommel.

Both hands then assume their proper position.

"Without Stirrups—Prepare to Dismount." Both hands, holding the reins, are placed with the fingers extended, and thumbs on the pommel.

"Dismount." Raise the body out of the saddle by both arms, bring the right leg clear over the croup to the near side, and alight on the ground, the weight thrown on the toes.

The right hand lays hold of the bridoon rein as before.

Observations. As soon as the Recruit is perfect in the detailed motions of mounting and dismounting, he must be practised in mounting and dismounting at once, without pausing between the several motions.

The Recruits being mounted, and having been taught to take up the stirrups and fasten them in front of the saddle over the horse's neck, will be placed in the

Position without Stirrups.

The body balanced in the middle of the saddle; head erect and square to the front; shoulders well thrown back; chest advanced; small of the back slightly bent forward; upper part of the arms hanging down straight from the shoulder; elbows bent and lightly closed to the hips; little fingers on a level with the elbows; wrists rounded, throwing the knuckles to the front, and thumbs pointing inwards across the body; each hand holding a rein, between the third and fourth finger, the end thrown over the forefinger and the thumb closed on it, the hands about three inches from the body, and varying from four to six inches apart.

The thigh well stretched down from the hip; the flat of the thigh to the saddle; knees a little bent, legs hanging straight
down from the knee and near the horse's sides; heels well stretched down, the toes raised from the insteps, and as near the horse's sides as the heels.

A plummet line from the front point of the shoulder should fall an inch behind the heel.

This is the position halted, or at a walk; at a trot the body must be inclined a little back, the whole figure pliant, and accompanying the movements of the horse. The elbows and lower limbs must be kept steady.

The Recruit is next to be instructed in the method of preserving his seat and balance on horseback, and of applying the aids of his hands and legs in the several turnings and paces of the horse.

Great care should be taken to avoid the risk of his being unhorsed or alarmed, and every means must be used to give him confidence.

For a few days he should ride quietly at a walk, round the manège, in order to get the habit of extending his limbs; of becoming accustomed to the movements of the horse, and of preserving the proper position and balance while in motion.

"March." In moving forward, the hands are to be eased by turning the little fingers towards the head of the horse; when in motion the hands resume their position.

"Halt." A steady feeling of both reins, by bringing the little fingers towards the breast, nails turned upwards; both legs closed for a moment, to keep the horse up to the hand; hands eased as soon as halted.

"Rein Back." A light feeling of both reins; little fingers towards the breast, and pressure of both legs to raise the forehand, and keep the haunches under the horse; ease the reins after every step, and feel them again.

To take the horse into the corners, the outward rein must be felt and the inward leg applied, still preserving the bend.

"Right or Left Turn." A double feeling of the inward rein, the outward retaining a steady feeling.

The horse kept up to the hand, by a pressure of both legs, the outward leg the strongest, to keep the haunches from being thrown out.

"Right or Left About." A double feeling of the inward rein, and stronger pressure of the inward leg, supported by the outward leg and rein, the horse turning on his centre.

Observations. By a turn about, the dressing is changed.

In turning to the right or right-about, the little finger of the right hand is to work towards the right shoulder; in turning
left or left-about, the left little finger towards the left shoulder; upwards in both cases, to raise the fore-hand.

In working to the right, the thumb of the inward (right) hand to be on a level with the little finger of the left; the inward rein one inch shorter, so as to let the rider see the horse's inward eye, and vice versa.

The squad, halted by the wall, in file; "Bend your Horses," play lightly with the inward rein, supporting with the outward leg and rein. The bend should be from the poll of the neck. Bending and unbending should be gradual.

The motion of the inward hand in bending, or forming a horse's mouth, should be by turning the little finger towards the body, nails upwards, and resuming the position, alternately, by a movement of the wrist, not by easing and drawing back the hand by a motion of the elbow, which must be kept steady.

It must be well explained that lightness of hand consists in an almost imperceptible feeling and alternate easing of the bridle, according to the motion of the horse, by which the delicacy of the horse's mouth is preserved.

Dressing.

"Dress." The Flank Man, and the man next to him, being placed with their horses square across the school, with one horse's length interval between them, the hind feet three yards from the boards; the remainder take up the Dressing in succession from the Flank to which the Dressing is ordered, each keeping the same interval.

Bodies to be quite square to the front; heads well up, and just turned enough to allow a glance of the eye towards the dressing point, so as to see only the surface of the face of the next file but one.

A correct position must be retained while dressing, whether halted, or moving; and no attempt must be made to catch the Dressing, by leaning forward, or back.

When moving across the school in Line, Dressing is to be correctly kept.

On arriving within a yard of the opposite side of the manège, each man, without any word of command, turns to the hand to which he dressed in marching, and moves round by the boards, keeping four feet distance from his horse's head to the croup of the horse in front of him.
Obs.: The "Dressing" remains to the same hand till changed by
1. Turn about.
2. Circle and change.
3. Incline.
4. Whole or half passage. All these change the Dressing.
The two first change the leading man.
The above Aids and Directions being explained to the Recruits as they make progress, they will commence with the most simple lessons; as

"Eyes Right—March—Right Turn." Turns to the right; to be repeated till some improvement is made.
While moving across the school, "Halt."

"Rein Back—Forward." Press the calves of both legs, yield the hand for an instant, then feel the reins again—on arriving at the wall, turn to the Right as before.

"Right Turn." Then, when moving across the school, "Halt."

"Right about Turn." Each man turns on his own centre. The dressing is now changed to the Left; and each man, on reaching the side of the manège, turns to the left, without word of command.

"Left Turn." Repeated till well done.

"Halt—Rein Back—Forward."

"Left Turn."

"Left About Turn."

This last changes the Dressing to the Right.
The Squad should occasionally be halted by the side of the manège in File, and reined back a few steps.
When they have been worked at a walk till they preserve their position, and practise the turns, &c., well, they may commence a gentle trot.

"Trot." Ease the reins, and press the calves of both legs according to the horse's temper, then feel both reins to raise the fore-hand.

Recruits must be taught to preserve their position, and seat, by the balance of the body, and not by clinging with their knees.
They should practise the turns at a trot, the same as at a walk, to either hand; and should file down the centre, to make them keep a straight line and cover well, depending more on their aids than the wall.
When they have learnt to preserve their seat and balance,
and to apply the aids well at a moderate trot, the pace may be gradually increased. It is also advantageous to make them change horses occasionally.

When the Recruit has learnt to preserve his proper seat and balance, and has a knowledge of the aids of hands and legs, he is to ride with spurs.

In making use of them, he must be taught not to open his thighs, or yield the body forward; the leg only should move, and the spur be applied just behind the girth.

The spur should be used as little as possible; but when it is, the horse should feel it; because a continued touching lightly, with the spur, will either make the horse kick, or cause him to become insensible to it. A jogging motion of the leg, therefore, with the heel drawn up, must never be allowed.

By the foregoing gradual instructions and moderate lessons, the Recruits will be fitted for the Single Ride.

---

Section III.

SINGLE RIDE.

Plate I. fig. 1. The Ride being formed in line, at the distance of three yards from the wall of the manège, with a horse's length interval between each file, and correctly dressed:

"Eyes Right—March." The Ride moves forward, preserving their dressing; on arriving within a yard of the wall, each man turns to the right, covering and keeping four feet distance from the man in front of him.

Plate I. fig. 1. 3. "Leading File Circle." They circle round the Instructor, proportioning the circle to the number of the ride—he corrects their positions; and as soon as the seat is good and uniform, gives the word.

"Go Large." They go round by the boards.

Plate I. fig. 2. 1. "Down the Centre." The leading file turns to the right, in the centre of the end of the school, followed by each file in succession, the horse being well supported with the outward leg, to keep the haunches from flying out; and the same to be attended to in turning to the right, in succession, at the lower end.

When in file by the wall,

Plate I. fig. 2. 2. "Right Turn." The turn to be made square, at the last sound of the word, and a steady pace kept. When the turn has been repeated till made correctly, and the dressing well kept across the school.
Fig. 1.

1 Ride formed Eyes Right.
2 March.
3 Leading File Circle.
4 Go large.

Fig. 2.

A Continued from Fig. 1.
1 Down the Centre.
2 Right turn.
PLATE II.

Fig. 1. B Continued from Plate I. Fig. 2.

CIRCLE RIGHT.
1 In File by the Wall.
2 Dressing to the Rear File.
3 Covering in the centre.

Fig. 2. C Continued from Plate I. Fig. 1.

CIRCLE AND CHANGE.
1 In File by the Wall.
2 Beginning to cover in centre.
3 Dressing and turning to left.
“Circle right.” Each file turns from the boards, by a double feeling of the inward rein, retaining a steady feeling of the outward, supporting well with the outward leg; in circling to the right, dressing and distance are taken from the right. Each turns from the boards with the leading file; in the centre of the school with the rear file; presses forward in the centre one yard, continues the circle, and arrives at the boards with the leading file.

In circling to the left, aids and dressing are by the same rule, Left being substituted for Right.

To try the correctness of the circling, the Ride may be halted on the turn, in the centre, at which time they should cover.

“Circle entire.” The circle to be continued till well done, and then “Go large.

“Circle and Change.” When eyes are right, having turned in the centre with the rear file, dressing is changed to the left, the circle to be nearly completed, then turn to the left, at the boards, with what is now the leading file.

Same movements repeated to the left, “Leading File Circle—Down the centre—Left Turn—Circle Left—Circle entire—Circle and Change,” brings them to work to the right again.

“Trot.” The foregoing to be repeated at a trot, to each hand, after each has been done at a walk, so as to produce ease to men and horses, by walking and trotting alternately. Great attention must be paid to regularity of pace.

The change from right to left, and from left to right again, may also be made by

“Down the Centre.” When the whole are in file in the centre.

“About.” Always to the hand to which they were working.

—At the word, each file halts steadily, turns about on the centre; beginning with the leading, and ending with the rear file; as soon as about, the dressing hand and bending of the horse are changed. Move off at the same pace, covering as before.

If the Ride was at a Trot, or canter, before the word “About,” the leading file moves two steps at a walk, after they are about, before he commences a trot or canter.

Or “Right Turn,” and when arrived in line, more than half across the school.

“About.” Each file turns about on his centre, changes dressing, when about, to the other hand, moving off with the leading file at the former pace, without any pause.

Or, being in file, by the left side of the manège.
Pl. III. | "Right incline." By a double feeling of the right rein, supporting with the left leg, each file makes a half turn from the boards, then moves, on an oblique line, to the other side of the manège. The leading file keeping the angle and direction, the rest conforming to him, and taking dressing and distance from the left, each file just seeing the right cheek and back of the right shoulder of the file on his left.

On arriving within a yard of the other side of the manège, each file squares his horse, making a half turn to the left, by feeling the left rein, supporting with the right leg and rein, changes the bend of the horse, and covers; dressing is now changed to the left.

If "Forward" is given in the centre of the school, the same is done there, the horses well supported with the right leg, to prevent the haunches flying out.

Oss.: (It must be explained that this is greater than the incline of manoeuvre, which is only an angle of 34°).

The Ride should be occasionally halted on the incline, to see that each file is placed in the proper direction, and that the dressing is correct.

Bending Lesson.

The Ride being in file by the boards working to the right.

Pl. IV. | "Right Shoulder in." The horses' heads to be brought into the School, with the (inward) or right rein, the left leg and rein supporting; then to be led off with the (outward) or left rein, the (inward) or right leg presses the horse to cross his legs, the (outward) or left keeps him up to the hand.

The horses are to be well bent, shoulders leading, the inward crossing over the outward legs; the fore and hind feet moving in two lines, in the same direction as the sides of the manège; the hind feet one yard from the boards.

If the horse is too square, the outward leg should be applied to check the haunches, and the outward rein should lead off the shoulders.

"Shoulders in" should be done slowly, and with frequent halts, to correct the position of the horses.

At the corners the inward rein stays the forehand; the inward leg circles the croup round; the outward rein then leads off again.

The men must be made to keep their position, and not be suffered to draw the heels up, and tickle the horse with the spur.
D Continued from Plate II. Fig. 2.
1 Down the Centre.
2 Left about, Eyes Right.
3 Right incline, Dressing to Left,
   Horses bent to Right.
4 Eyes Left, bent to Left.

E Continued from Fig. 1.
1 In File, Eyes Left.
2 Left about.
3 Eyes Right.
F Continued from Plate III. Fig. 2.
1 Right Shoulder in.
2 Staying forehand, circling croupes round at the corners.
3 Right half passage.
4 Left Shoulder in.
5 Up the Centre left pass.

G Continued from Fig. 1.
1 Up Centre left pass.
2 Bank off.
3 Right Shoulder in.
4 Right pass.
5 Forward.
The change of dressing in the Bending Lesson is made as follows.

The Head of the Ride in "Right shoulder in," being halfway up the side of the manège, at the word "Right half pass," the leading file presses his horse gently forward with both legs. When the horse enters the new line, with his fore feet, the calf of the left leg must be pressed, to bring the quarters gradually into their proper oblique direction, with respect to the fore feet, the fore and hind feet moving on two oblique, or diagonal, lines to the other side of the manège.

The right rein leads, and bends, the left leg presses, and obliges the horse to place the left foot before the right. The left rein assists, and balances the power of the right, the right leg keeps him up to the hand, and makes him advance, at the same time that he is "passing" to the right.

Each file in succession, when arrived at the point where the leading file began, applies the same aids, commences the "half-passage," and dresses to the right, just seeing the left cheek and back of the left shoulder of the man to the right.

The leading file on arriving near the boards closes the right leg, changes the position of the horse's head with the left rein, and moves forward by the boards; dressing changed to the left.

Each file follows in succession, when arrived near the boards. The leading file moves slow till all are in file, when the Instructor orders "Forward."

If the word is given,

"Leading File, Left Shoulder in." On arriving near the boards, the leading file stays the forehand with the left rein, and changes the position of the horse's head, circles the croup round with the left leg, and then leads off with the right rein; each doing the same in succession.

The head of the Ride at "Left shoulder in," being near the centre of the end of the manège,

"Up the Centre, Left pass." At the centre each file in succession closes the right leg, and leads the horse off with the left rein, "passing" on a straight line, down the centre.

The left rein bends and leads, the right balances and assists the power of the left; the right leg makes the horse cross his legs, the outward over the inward, the left leg keeps him up to the hand.
"Rank off." The leading file closes the left leg and presses forward straight to the boards—turns to the right, changing the bend, and moves round to the right, slowly, till the whole are in file.

Each succeeding file "passes up" to the same ground, keeping the dressing, shoulders and haunches arriving together, and then follows the file before him.

The Ride being at "Right shoulders in," by the side of the manège, at the word

"Right pass." The whole together close the left leg, and lead off with the right rein, "passing" across the school, covering to the front. On arriving at the boards, close the right leg, change the bend of the horse, and press forward by the boards; dressing changed to the left.

If "Left shoulder in" is ordered, the Aids are as already explained.

"Halt" (in the "Shoulder in"). Feel both reins, and close the outward leg.

"Halt" (in the "Passage"). Feel both reins, closing the inward leg.

**Turns in the Bending Lesson.**

In "Shoulder in." On the forehead; the inward rein staying the forehead, the inward leg circling the croup round; when turned, the shoulders are led on, by the outward rein.

In the "Passage." On the haunches; the inward leg staying the hind quarters, and a double feeling of the inward rein, circling the forehead round; the outward leg prevents the haunches from flying out.

From "Shoulder in," to "Pass, Shoulder out."

A double feeling of the outward rein, and double pressure of the outward leg, supported by the inward leg and rein, turning on the centre; when turned, lead off with the inward rein.

From "Pass, Shoulder out," to "Shoulder in."

A double feeling of the inward rein, a double pressure of the inward leg, supported by the outward leg and rein, the horse turning on his centre; when turned, lead off with the outward rein.

These changes may be made either in the centre or by the wall.
PLATE V.

Fig. 1.

1 Right turn, in Right Shoulder in.
2 Right pass, from Right Shoulder in.
3 Rank off.
4 Left pass, from Left Shoulder in.

Fig. 2.

1 Left turn, in Left pass.
2 Rank off.
3 Right Shoulder in.
4 Right pass Shoulder out turning on Centre.
5 From Right pass, to Right Shoulder in.
6 From Right Shoulder in, in the centre of the School, to Right inwards pass.
PLATE VI.

Fig. 1.  
1 Canter to the Right.  
2 Half Passage.  
3 Change.  

N.B.—In single Ride this should commence from the centre of the end of the School, and should arrive at the middle of the side.

Fig. 2.  
1 Canter to the Left.  
2 Half Passage.  
3 Change.
The Canter.

When the Ride works well at a trot, and in the Bending Lesson, and the horses are well bent and collected, the "Canter" may be commenced.

The Ride to be told off by fours; the even numbers to be formed up, and sit at ease, while the odd numbers canter; and then the others, alternately.

The Instructor makes the files trot round him in circle, and when they are steady, orders the "Canter;" or turning them across the school, orders "Canter;" just before they arrive at the opposite boards, which makes it easy to strike off true.

"Canter." A light and firm feeling of both reins, to raise the horse's forehand; a pressure of both legs, to bring the haunches under him.

A double feeling of the inward rein, and a stronger pressure of the outward leg, to make the horse strike off true and united. The horses should lead off correctly, without throwing their haunches in; the rider, in applying the aids for cantering, is to remain steady in the middle of the saddle, without leaning forward. If a horse is false, the man should not check the Ride, but close up to half the distance ordered, make half a halt at the next corner, feel the inward rein, and close the outward leg.

In going to the right, a horse should lead with the off foreleg, followed by the off hind: in going to the left, with the near fore, followed by the near hind.

In cantering to the right, a horse leading with the two near legs is "false."

In cantering to the left, if he leads with both off legs, he is "false."

Cantering with the near fore, followed by the off hind, or off fore, followed by the near hind, is "disunited."

When the horse has struck off correctly, hands and legs resume their proper position. The reins to be eased at every stroke, by the play of the wrist, avoiding a dead pull.

"Down the Centre." The Ride is ordered down the centre, to see that the horses are well supported in the turn with the outward legs, that they cover well, and the horses do not throw the haunches out.

"Turns" to right and left, should be made to each hand, till well done, as in the trot.

Obs.: The Canter, though collected, should never be so slow as at all to affect the freedom and spring of the horse's action.
Sometimes a ride keeps a good pace round the school, but in turning, the pace is lost and becomes hurried, by the rider's feeling the inward rein too strongly, and not supporting by the outward rein and leg; or by yielding the hand too much, and not keeping the haunches under him. Many horses, when turned, feel too much constraint, and to relieve themselves, lean on the rider's hand. If he yields the reins at that moment, instead of closing the hand firmly, turning the little finger towards the breast upwards, and pressing both legs, the horse comes on his shoulders.

When a horse defends himself against being collected by leaning on the hand, he should be corrected, by the rider keeping him well up to it, (or if it can be done, by reining him back,) but as soon as the horse yields to the hadd, the hand should yield to him.

The Instructor must see that the same pace is kept across the school.

Those horses that continue "false," to be turned into the school, brought to a trot, and then the proper Aids applied.

"Circle Right (or Left)." "Circle," "Right," or "Left," should follow the turns, as in the trot.

The horses should be well bent to the hand to which they are circling, and supported with the outward leg; but if a horse throws his haunches in too much, he will then require more support with the inward leg.

This should not be practised till the horses are well in hand, and in the beginning, a horse's length distance should be ordered, to give room.

The "Dressing" is changed in the "Canter" by

Pl. VI. "Half Passage." The Ride being in file, and
fig. 1. going round the school, the leading file turns from
fig. 2. the boards at the centre of the end of the school, followed by each file in succession.

In turning from the boards, the outward leg prevents the haunches from flying out, the forehand being brought in by a double feeling of the inward rein, each taking off from the same ground with the leading file.

Each man dressing his horse's head on the outward knee of the man in front of him: forehands and haunches to arrive together at the side of the school, and then the horse to be changed, but not before; which is prevented by closing the outward leg, and not changing the position of the horse's head, till arrived at the boards. This should be practised first at a walk, to see the horses properly placed.
SINGLE RIDE.

At first the Ride should trot after the "Half Passage," till sufficiently improved to change at the "Canter;" or, by "Inclining." Make a half turn from the boards, the horses bent the way they are inclining, till they arrive at the opposite side; there make half a halt, change the position of the horse's head, and leading leg, and continue the "Canter," the dressing changed. Or, by "Halt" and "About." Either while in file down the centre, or in line, across the school.

Halting in the "Canter" must not be practised till the hand and seat are good, so as not to strain the hocks by a sudden jerk; the Ride is therefore at first to be brought to the "Trot," from the "Canter," previous to the halt.

When they are well advanced, "About" may be ordered on the "Canter;" in which case, first making a steady halt, they come about and resume the "Canter;" dressing being changed.

The men being perfect in Single Ride without stirrups, and the horses well broke with bridoons, they now take their stirrups, and ride with bits.

Position of Bridle Hand, with the Bit.

The upper part of the arm hanging straight down from the shoulder, the left elbow lightly touching the hip: the lower part of the arm square to the upper; little finger on a level with the elbow; wrist rounded outward; the back of the hand to the front, the thumb pointing across the body. The hand opposite the centre of the body, and three inches from it. The bridoon rein, when working with the bit, to be held in the full of the bridle hand, and apart from the bit reins. The top of the thumb firmly closed on the bit-reins, which are divided by the little finger.

The little finger of the bridle-hand has four lines of action:
1. Towards the breast.
2. Towards the right shoulder.
3. Towards the left shoulder.
4. Towards the horse's head.

1. In "Halting," the little finger is turned upwards, towards the breast, and resumes its position as soon as the horse is halted.

In "Reining back," these motions are repeated alternately at every step.

2. In "Turning to the Right" and "Right about," the
little finger is turned, and the hand a little raised towards the right shoulder.

In "Right Shoulder in," on turning from the boards, the little finger towards the right shoulder; when in Shoulder in, the little finger should partly work upwards, towards the breast, partly towards the left shoulder, to keep the horse's shoulders leading.

In "Right Pass," the little finger towards the right shoulder; if the forhand is too much advanced, the little finger towards the body to check it.

In "Half Passage," the little finger not so much to the right shoulder.

3. In "Working to the Left," the same movements towards the left shoulder, as laid down above towards the right.

4. In "Moving Forward," the little finger towards the horse's head, to ease the reins for a moment.

RIDING WITH ARMS.

When the horses work well with the bit, and the men have acquired steadiness and lightness of hand—

Having been previously perfected in Sword, Carbine, Pistol, and Lance Exercise on foot—the men are to be practised in the same, mounted, according to the Regulations for each.

"Carry Swords." The right arm half-way between the wrist and the elbow, to touch the hip lightly; the wrist rounded so as to incline the edge slightly to the left; sword hand to rest on the thigh.

"Slope Swords." By bringing the lower part of the arm square with the upper, and by bending the wrist upwards, and relaxing the 3rd and 4th fingers, the sword is allowed to fall back on the shoulder.

When "Draw Swords" is ordered at a walk, the men remain at "Carry Swords," till ordered to "Slope;" when at a "Trot" or "Canter," they come to "Slope" directly.

Leaping.

When the Instructor considers the Ride sufficiently advanced for the purpose, "Leaping" should be generally practised at the end of each lesson.

For the "Standing Leap," bring the horse up to the bar at an animated walk, halt him with a light hand on his haunches;
as he rises, feel the reins only enough to prevent their becoming slack; when the horse springs, yield them entirely; when the hind feet come to the ground, collect the horse again, resuming the usual position, and moving on at the same pace: the body is to be inclined forward, as the horse rises, and backward as he alights.

For the "Flying Leap," the horse must not be hurried, or allowed to rush; but his head must be kept steadily and straight to the bar, with a light hand; position the same as in the "Standing Leap."

In Leaping, the bridoon will be used.

Checking the horse, after he has made the leap, must be particularly avoided; as the horse takes it as a punishment, when he ought to be encouraged, and becomes shy of the bar the next time.

The Instructor will, of course, use his judgment in varying these movements so as not to make the lesson too tedious,—practising one day what had been omitted the day before.

During the lesson he will occasionally order "Halt," and "Sit at Ease," or "Dismount."

Whenever opportunity offers, the men and horses should be practised in leaping Ditches; for doing which, the above instructions are equally applicable.

Section IV.

DOUBLE RIDE.

The Ride being in motion round the school, "From the Front Tell off by Fours."

The leading file says, "One," the next "Two," and so on; each file, in telling off, turning his head inwards.

The Double Ride may be formed by "Half Sections" "Down the Centre," or "Right and Left Incline;" on which the Odd numbers incline to the right, and the Even numbers to the left; or by "Right and Left Pass;" on which the Odd numbers pass to the right, the Even numbers to the left.

In both cases, the files, on arriving at the boards, go round the manège to the opposite hand from that to which they inclined or passaged; i.e., Even numbers to the right—Odd numbers to the left.
Or, when marching in line across the school, by "Odd numbers Right about Turn;" on which the Odd numbers go about, changing dressing to the left, and go round to the left.

The file leading to the left, answers for the pace; the file leading to the right, keeping half a horse's length less forward, his horse's head dressed on the knee of the other. The files pass, always, bridle-hand to bridle-hand.

"Close your Files." The leading files keeping a steady pace, the remainder walk out till they have the distance for Double Ride, four feet, or trot up to that distance if ordered.

"Down the Centre." This word must be given in time to allow the files going to the right, to press up even with those going to the left, the leading files turning down the centre abreast of one another, at three yards interval, odd numbers dressing by the left.

At the end of the school, the file to the right dresses again as before.

"Right and Left Turn." Across the school, carefully preserving dressing and interval.

The turns being well made,

"Circle Right and Left." Two circles are formed with space of three yards between them, or less, according to the size of the manège; both files to turn from the boards and from the centre at the same time.

"Circle Entire," "Go Large," "Circle and Change." The same to be practised to the other hand, "Right and Left Incline." From the boards, when within three yards, they square the horses together without a command; cover and press forward down the centre.

"Right and Left Incline." From the centre towards the boards.

"Down the Centre," "About." The files go about to the hand to which they were working, i.e., outwards from one another. To be repeated to the other hand.

"Right and Left Turn." Having passed one another in the centre,

"Rein Back." The men not to look behind them, but to trust to the horse being square, and interval correctly kept, to pass the opposite files.

"Forward." The "Turns," "Circles," "Inclines," &c., to be done at a walk and trot, as laid down in "Single Ride."
FORMING DOUBLE RIDE.

1 Down the Centre.
2 Right and Left Incline, Odd numbers to Right, Even numbers to Left.
3 Forward by the wall. Odd numbers Eyes Left, Even numbers Eyes Right.

FORMING DOUBLE RIDE.

1 Down the Centre.
2 Right and Left pass, Odd numbers to Right, Even numbers to Left.
3 Forward by the wall. Odd numbers, Eyes Left. Even numbers, Eyes Right.
Forming Double Line.
1 In file, in Single Ride, Eyes Right.
2 Crossing School after Right turn.
3 Odd numbers, Right about.
4 Even numbers, Eyes Left, Odd numbers, Eyes Right.

1 Close your files.
2 File going to Right, horse's head dressed on knee of file going to Left.
3 Right and Left turn, pass Bridle hand to Bridle hand.
Fig. 1.

1 Circle Right and Left.
2 Circle and change, shown in one Odd and Even number only.

Fig. 2.

1 Right and Left incline towards the Centre.
2 Right and Left incline outwards shown in two files only.
PLATE X.

Fig. 1.

1 Down the centre, the Files going to Right. Dress up abreast of files going to Left.
2 About outwards from one another.

Fig. 2.

1 Right and Left turn.
2 Rein back, Files passing one another, in reining back.
PLATE XI.

Fig. 1.

1 Right and Left Shoulder in.
2 Down the Centre Right and Left Pass.
3 Right and Left Shoulder in, the change shown in one file.
4 Right and Left inwards pass, the change shown in one file.

Fig. 2.

1 Down the Centre Right and Left Pass.
2 Right and Left turn on Hunches.
3 Right and Left Shoulder in.
4 Leading file to the Right Pass from Right Shoulder in.
5 Leading file Right Shoulder in again.
PLATE XII.

Fig. 1.

1. From Right and Left Shoulder in, to Right and Left Pass, Shoulder out.
2. From Right and Left Pass, Shoulder out, to Right and Left Shoulder in.
3. Down the Centre, in Shoulder in.
4. Forward down the Centre, or may be by the boards.

Fig. 2.

Canter.

1. Horse's length, and half distance.
2. Turn at the Corners.
3. Even numbers about on the Hannels.
Right and Left half passage, vide Plate VI., Fig. 1. 2.
Bending Lesson.

"Right and Left Shoulder in." Up the sides of the manège. When near the centre of the end, "Down the Centre," "Right and Left Pass," "Right and Left Shoulder in." The horses turning on the centre, continue the Shoulder in on two lines down the middle of the school.

"Right and Left—Inwards Pass." The horses turning on the centre again, continue the passage on two lines down the middle of the school.

"Right and Left Turn." The horses turning on the haunches, continue the passage to the boards, and there press forwards again.

"Right and Left Shoulder in." At the end of the school the Files working to the Right receive the word, "Leading File, Right Pass." Each of those files at the corner comes to "Right Pass" in succession, so that the files pass head to head.

When the leading file has cleared those in "Left Shoulder in, " "Leading File, Right Shoulder in." Both being at Shoulder in again.

"Right and Left Pass, Shoulder out." Horses turning on the centre continue to passage, heads to the boards, and half a yard from them.

"Right and Left Shoulder in." Horses turned on the centre.

"Forward." Horses to be squared, and press forward round by the boards.

The succession of these movements may be varied at the discretion of the Instructor, who must pay due attention to all turns being made correctly, whether on forehand, centre, or haunches.

When passing down the centre, at the word, "Rank off," they rank off alternately, bridle-hand to bridle-hand, commencing with the right leading file; all to come up forehand and haunches together, to the same ground, and no incline allowed in going to the boards.

"Canter," "Down the Centre." The leading files turning together, and leading down the centre, the remaining covering correctly, haunches following true, neither thrown in nor out.

The turns and circles to right and left, down the centre, and

* The term is only made use of in the centre of school.
about, may be practised as at a trot, as well as the “Half passage to the right and left,” from the end of the school.

“Draw Swords.” The Ride may be ordered down the centre, and perform the Sword Exercise, practise cuts and points, cuts and guards, and points and defence, the leading files turning from the end of the school, two yards from the corner, so as to allow working the sword up the school again.

The Lance Exercise may be done in the same way; but when the lances are without balls, the files must work to the right and left from one another, by word of command, to avoid accidents.

The instructors to be careful not to do too much, and by walking or halting occasionally to ease the horses.

“Return Swords, Draw Pistols.” Loading and firing at a canter is to be practised; “Right and Left Present†,” always inwards, towards one another from the sides, and from one another down the centre.

When at the “Present,” in passing at the end of the school, each file recovers pistol at the corner, and presents again when past the other files.

Having fired and loaded again at the canter, and made two or three turns steadily, just while passing in the centre,

“Halt,” “Front Present.” The horses' heads to be lightly bent to the left.

“Fire,” “Return Pistol,” “March, Draw Swords, and Guard.” The men, instead of drawing swords with the regular motions, draw so as to come to the guard at once. “Right Front Guard,” when halted; when in motion, the files to the left, “Left Front Guard”; those to the right, “Right Front Guard.” If passing at the end of the school, both “Left Front Guard” till passed.

“Slope Swords,” “Take four Yards' Distance.” The leading files increase their pace till each has gained his distance in succession.

Pl. XII. fig. 2. 2. “Turn at the Corners.” At the corner, the file leading to the left makes a turn and a half on the haunches, and leads in an oblique line to the other side and end of the school, each doing the same in succession.

* As far as applicable, the carbine is to be used with Regiments which are armed with that weapon.

† The “Present to the Right,” has only been retained in this instance, as the files on the right rein would be prevented by the wall from firing to the left.
The files to the right do the same at the opposite corner, each passing close behind the croup of the even number and through the proper interval, preserving distance and covering correctly, to prevent any check or wavering.

The files being at the sides of the school,

"Increase your Pace." The leading files gradually increase the pace to that of manoeuvre, eleven miles per hour, keeping the distance correctly; the Instructor takes care that the horses are properly bent and true, and the men's positions well preserved. When settled to a steady pace,

"Canter Short." Collect the horses to the school pace. When steady,

"Trot." The whole drop at once into the regulated trot of the school.

When steady, "Trot Out." Increase gradually to the trot of manoeuvre, $8\frac{1}{2}$ miles per hour.

When steady, "Trot Short." Collect the horses to the school pace again.

"Canter," "Odd (or Even) numbers About." The files on the left rein go about. They come about on the haunches, being at the boards.

"Circle Right." The odd and even numbers turn to the right from the boards together, circle round each other, advancing with "Right Front Guard."

"Attack." When within measure, the odd numbers cut one and two at the opponents' face; they defend by First and Second Guard; or, the even numbers may attack, and the odd defend.

After they have circled round each other, they retire with the "Right Rear Guard."

"Leading Files, Right Incline." The files pass each other left hand to left hand.

"Circle Left." Circle, as to the right hand, but now they advance with the "Left Front Guard," "Attack" as before, and retire with the "Left Rear Guard."

"Leading Files, Left Incline." Passing again left hand to left hand. "Even numbers About."

Observations. In this circling, the files being prepared with masks and basket-sticks, or half with sticks and half with lance foils, may be ordered to circle entire, and to engage loose, great attention being paid to the steadiness of the bridle-hand, and to the proper aid of the legs; so that the horses may not be struck or rendered unsteady.

"Dress up." Each leading file halts on the side on which
he left the boards, fronting the other files at a horse’s length distance; the remainder halt and dress to their leaders, on the same side the school; then march, and then “Even numbers About.”

It is, however, a better practice with the masks and sticks, (when time can be spared for it,) to form the odd numbers at one end, the even numbers at the other end of the school, and then two being named, one from each squad, advance at a canter, and meeting in the middle of the school, take their own mode of attacking and defending; and practising the directions in the Regulations for Sword Exercise.

“Close your Files.” Leading files keep the pace; the rest close up.

“Leading Files, Circle Right and Left.” The leading files turn from the boards, and form a circle to the right and left; the remainder following: the track of the leading files correctly; the circle must be proportionate to the strength of the Ride. In narrow schools this cannot be done by odd and even numbers together, but may be done by each in succession, the others being halted.

“Leading Files Change.” Making a sharp incline, they change and begin the circle on the other hand; the leading files conform to one another, so as to turn from the boards and from the centre together; having changed again, and the leading files in the centre of the school.

“Forward.” They lead straight down the centre.

“Take Four Yards Distance.”

“Odd (or Even) numbers Dress on the Intervals.” Those going to the right dress on the interval.

“Down the Centre.” When about half way down the school,

“Change and Circle Right and Left.” The leading file to the left being in advance, changes first; the other leading file close behind his horse’s croup; all the files to the left changing in front of those to the right.

The files must not turn too sharp, but incline so as to pass close to the croup of the horse, changing before each.

The leading file that has changed to the left, begins his circle as soon as he has changed, at a very collected pace.

* Many of these movements are adapted for the open manège, and cannot well be done in small schools.
1 Files in Canter.
2 Circle Right.

1 Leading Files Right incline.
2 When opposite Circle Left.
3 Change by leading Files Left incline, and then even numbers about.
PLATE XIV.

Fig. 1.

1. Close your Files.
2. Leading Files Circle Right and Left.
3. Leading Files change.
4. Forward after having changed again.
5. Horse's length and a half from the front.

N.B.—Where the School will allow, the leading files should not come nearer than 3 yards in the circles.

Fig. 2.

1. Odd or Even numbers whichever are working to the Right dress on the interval.
2. Down the Centre.
3. Change.
4. Circle Right and Left files closing.
5. Go large, having circled twice, resuming horse's length and a half distance.
1 Odd numbers working to Right dressed on the interval Right and Left Turn.
2 Even numbers Left about and forward when Odd numbers abreast.
3 Single Ride formed going to Right.

1 Commencing Serpentine.
2 First Change.
3 Second Change.
4 Third Change.
5 Fourth Change.
1 Files from the Right at three horses' length distance. Change Right hand to Right hand.
2 Right and Left about form.

1 Ride formed Right and Left about. 2 From flanks to front file 3 horses' length. 3 Change Right hand to Right hand.
The leading file that has changed to the right, rides a circle round the others, every one following the track of the leading file, and closing up to a yard’s distance. When he sees that all have changed, he increases his pace; after circling twice round,

“Go Large.” The leading files start at an increased pace, till the distances are correct again. In beginning this lesson, the change to be practised first without circling.

“Right and Left Turn,” “Odd numbers Halt,” “Even numbers about,” “Dress,” “Eyes Right,” “March,” “Canter.” Or the Single Ride may be same way at a “Canter,” only that, instead of the files passing, the files that go about do so before the others come up to them, and when they do, move on together.

The Ride going to the right, when near the corner,

“Serpentine.” The leading file inclines to the right across the school, not too sharply, and makes a zig-zag course down the school, always coming within a horse’s length of the side of the manège, or formed in the nearer, according to the size of it; and arriving at the end, he goes the same way at which he commenced.

In turning to the right, the horses to canter to the right; in turning to the left, change and canter to the left; the change to be made without checking, neither throwing the haunches in nor out, but exactly following the leading file.

Before “Serpentine” is done at a canter, it should be tried at a walk and trot.

After the Serpentine,

“Right about Form.” At the end of the school at loose files.

The Ride may now leap by twos over the bar in the centre; first at a walk, and then at a canter; or may perform the post practice.

The Instructor may vary the order of succession of the foregoing movements; nor is it intended that all should be performed in each lesson.

At the end of every lesson, the Ride is formed, at loose files, at the end of the manège, and advances in line the length of the school, varying the pace from “walk,” to “trot,” and “canter,” on different days. The Instructor is to see that the whole lead with the same leg, according to the dressing.

Occasionally it is a good practice to name two men, three or four files distant, who, on the word “March,” advance at the
pace ordered, preserving their dressing distance and straight direction to the end, where they are halted. Two others being named, do the same, and so on, till the whole Ride is formed near the end. This accustoms the horses to quit the ranks readily, and the men to start them true and square with the proper aids, and to keep them in a straight line without swerving, when unsupported by other horses on the right and left.

When halted near the end, till the Ride commences firing in the lesson, one pistol is fired in front of the Ride, encouraging the horses, and giving a handful of oats to those which are timid.

After firing, the horses may be advanced into the smoke. This is found to steady the horses more effectually than a great deal of firing mounted, before the horses are accustomed to it.

Post Practice.

The Ride should now be instructed to Thrust and Cut at the rings and heads attached to the posts, which are supplied to the Cavalry Riding Houses for the practice with Arms. This practice will give a confidence and precision in the application of the Edge and Point, as well as the requisite celerity and judgment of time and measure, as each post having an arm attached to it to represent a sword, lance, or bayonet, the swordsman is consequently forced to turn it out of the line by some mode of defence, before he can make his own offensive movement, both of which must be executed with great quickness; he should therefore be practised first at a walk, and so on progressively to a canter, &c. It is also requisite that he should be practised to commence with the attack by having the arms of the posts turned outwards, and delivering the Points and the Cuts One, Two, and Three; to do which, in quick succession, the posts are all to be placed on one side of the school. When the school is otherwise occupied this practice may be carried on in the barrack square or exercising ground, occasionally varying the order of the posts, so that a Cut or Point may be alternately given. By placing the posts according to their numbers Four, Five, Two, Six, Three, or moving Four, Five and Six to the right, the Files passing between the two lines of posts may give the Cuts on the right and Points to the left; it being clearly understood that the movement of attack against each is invariably the same as directed in the Post Practice.
Fig. 1.

POST PRACTICE.

RIGHT PRACTICE.

1st. Post 2nd Guard, Point.
2nd. Strike the arm forward, Point.
3rd. 4th Guard, Low Point.
4th. 2nd Guard, Cut One.
5th. Strike the arm forward, Cut Two.
6th. 4th Guard, Cut Three.

LEFT PRACTICE.

6th. Post 3rd Guard, Cut Four.
5th. Strike the arm forward, Cut One.
4th. 1st Guard, Cut Two.
3rd. 3rd Guard, Low Point.
2nd. Strike the arm forward, Point.
1st. 1st Guard, Point.

1 Files about.
2 Change Right hand to Right hand at the upper end.
3 These files having changed, change again when about.
Right Practice.

First    Post, Second Guard, Point.
Second Ditto, Strike the arm forward, Point.
Third Ditto, Fourth Guard, Low Point.
Fourth Ditto, Second Guard, Cut One.
Fifth Ditto, Strike the arm forward, Cut Two.
Sixth Ditto, Fourth Guard, Cut Three.

The following Left Practice is added, having the posts on the Left, the Files going about, and consequently commencing at the sixth post, which, with the rest, must have the arm turned.

Left Practice.

Sixth Post, Third Guard, Cut Four.
Fifth Ditto, Strike the arm forward, Cut One.
Fourth Ditto, First Guard, Cut Two.
Third Ditto, Third Guard, Low Point.
Second Ditto, Strike the arm forward, Point.
First Ditto, First Guard, Point.

Note.—In the above practices it will be observed that the Posts No. 2 and No. 5 are those at which the defence is made to the front, whether they are to the Right or Left, and with the remaining four, viz., Nos. 1, 3, 4, 6, it is always made to the Rear.

The following may be practised by 1st class rides, at the discretion of the commanding officer.

Two rides, 16 each, in the school going large on the right rein. Two markers dismounted A and B are placed facing each other between the 1st markers on the boards, about a horse's length and a half apart. When the leading file arrives at the first marker, the command "Leading file Spiral" is given. The leading file then describes a large circle and continues circling within the last described circle until he has completed three circles within the outer original circle, which will have brought him to the markers in the centre of the circle. He then turns to the right through the markers, changes to the left rein at C, and continues describing circles between those, still on the right rein, until clear of the rear of the rides. The leading file should gradually diminish his pace until the change between the markers A and B is made, when he will again gradually increase it till the spiral is completed. The
pace must be again collected in making the final circle before "going large."

Section V.

TRAINING OF THE YOUNG HORSE.

The first object in the training of the horse is, by gentle and progressive lessons, to make him quiet and tractable; for which purpose, all the proper means must be used—such as feeding, patting, handling, rubbing him, taking up his feet, &c.

The practice of the longe is intended for this purpose, as well as to render him supple, to give him the free and proper use of his limbs, to form his paces, and to prepare him in all respects for the cavalry service.

This part, therefore, of the instruction of the horse, as it requires great judgment, patience, and attention, should be entrusted only to the most careful and experienced men. If harsh treatment be used, he will become timid, and the fear of being roughly treated will incline him to resistance and disobedience. Every kind of violence and severity must therefore be avoided.

Bridling.

The horse being brought to the riding house, or longeing ground, a plain snaffle bridle is to be placed in his mouth, so as
to touch lightly both corners of it without gagging, or making him uneasy; the throat band must be sufficiently slack to admit the breadth of three fingers under the jaw-bone. The snaffle reins are to be tied, so as to hang loose upon his neck.

Cavesson.

The snaffle bridle having been properly fitted, the horse should be encouraged, and the cavesson put on. It should be placed about three inches above the nostrils; if higher, it would partly lose its power; if lower, it would affect his breathing.

The strap of the cavesson, (which should act both as a nose-band and curb,) going under the snaffle, must not be buckled too tight, as the horse would thereby be made uneasy; the additional strap from check-piece to check-piece, under the jaw-bone, is to keep the cavesson back from his eyes. The preparations should be made by two men only; if more be employed, a young horse is apt to take alarm. No noise with whips should be made, and care should at all times be taken that nothing may hurt, tickle, or otherwise annoy him.

The first lesson to be taught a young horse is to go forward, and until he does this freely nothing else should be required of him, as it might cause him to become restive.

When he is accustomed to go forward readily, he should be occasionally stopped and caressed.

Longeong.

This lesson should be begun on a circle from 20 to 30 yards in diameter. As horses are usually fed, watered, saddled, and led on the near side, they are generally inclined to follow and lead better by the left rein than by the right. If, therefore, it should be found that a horse is less tractable on the off than on the near side, two lessons should be given on the right to one on the left. A young horse must not be supposed to be restive, if he should hesitate, or stand still, when it is intended that he should move on; because this often happens from fear, or from his not knowing what is required of him, which may be overcome by encouragement.

A man with a whip (with which the horse must not be struck at first) following at a distance, should show it now and then, when the horse seems to hang back; and he should strike the ground in the rear of the horse, if he disregards the encouragement of the man who leads him. When this does not produce the effect, he may be lightly touched with the whip behind the girths.
After the horse has been led several times round the circle at a walk, the man holding the longeing rein should gently urge him to a trot; if the horse goes quietly, he gradually lengthens the longeing rein, so that the horse may scarcely feel it; he should continue to go round the circle at an active pace, nearly opposite the horse's shoulders, so as to keep him out and press him forward.

If the horse takes kindly to his lesson, the man holding the whip will be sufficient to keep him out to the circle, and up to his pace; and the man holding the cavesson may lengthen it by degrees, until the circle on which he himself moves becomes a small one, or until he has only to turn round on the same spot. Should the horse fly or plunge, the cavesson rein may be shaken, without jerking, which will bring him to a trot or walk again. The man holding the rein ought to have a light and easy hand. For the first two or three days the horse should not be urged too much; if he goes gently, without jumping or resisting, it is sufficient. In this manner the horse may be longed to the right, left, and to the right again, changing often from the walk to the trot. When he has been longed a few times to each hand, he should be halted, by gently feeling the longeing rein, and by speaking to him; the rein should be carefully shortened, and gathered up in the hand, and the horse led to the centre of the circle, caressed, and dismissed.

Having practised the above lesson for a few days, the horse may be urged a little more in the trot, but the greatest care and attention are requisite to teach him to use his limbs without straining them. An accident may easily occur in this lesson by a sudden jerk, or by a too forcible pull of the cavesson.

After each lesson, which ought never to be so long as to fatigue the horse, he should be led into the centre of the circle, and placed straight upon all fours; he should then be caressed, and a few oats may be given to him. The man holding the longeing rein should take it short in one hand, at the same time patting and rubbing the horse about the neck and head with the other; he should then try, with the right hand, to "bend" the horse's head a little to the right; the "bend" ought to be in the very poll of the neck. This must be done very carefully, and by slow degrees; and, if repeated after each lesson, to the left as well as to the right, it will greatly assist the future instruction.

After the bending lesson the horse must be tried in "reining back." The man who holds the cavesson, placing himself in front and facing the horse, should take the snaffle reins near the rings in both hands, and endeavour, by a gentle and alternate
pressure of the bit against the bars of the horse's mouth, to make him go back a step or two, always moving him forward after reining him back.

If he yields to the pressure of the bit, this will, at first, be sufficient.

Saddling a Young Horse.

This should be done, in the first instance, in the manège, or longeing ground, and with the utmost caution. One man facing the horse, and taking the snaffle in both hands near the rings of the bit, should hold him while another places the saddle on his back, the girths and stirrups being laid upon it. The girths are then to be carefully let down, and the saddle placed in the middle of the horse's back, the front of it about the breadth of a hand behind the play of the shoulder.

"Girthing." Having placed the saddle, and the horse showing no uneasiness or resistance, the man takes the girths very gently, and draws them on each strap, loosely at first, so as merely to prevent the saddle from falling off; he afterwards tightens them by degrees, by drawing them on the straps alternately, a single hole at a time: great care must be taken that the girths be not drawn so tightly as to occasion uneasiness to the horse; they should always admit of the fingers being passed easily between them and his body.

The horse, being thus treated kindly and carefully, and the saddle kept on his back for a few hours each day, will soon bear to be saddled with less caution; but a proper degree of it must always be observed in girthing horses, whether young or old.

Crupper.

Great caution must also be used in putting on the crupper; any mismanagement in the early attempts may create a difficulty not easy to be overcome. Almost all horses will bear a smooth firm handling of their quarters and tail if gradually begun by patting and rubbing the body; but few will suffer a light or undecided touch, which therefore must be carefully avoided.

In putting on the crupper, care must be taken that none of the long hair of the tail remains between it and the dock. The crupper, when properly fitted and placed, should admit the breadth of the hand between it and the croup of the horse.

"Breast Plate." The breast plate should be so buckled that the upper head of the rosette in front be the breadth of three
fingers above the sharp breast-bone of the horse's chest; it should admit the breadth of the hand on the flat of his shoulder-bone; and also between the martingale and his chest. During these operations, the horse's attention is to be kept up by the man who is holding him; and every step in their progress should be accompanied by caresses and encouragement.

The saddle being properly fitted on the horse's back, the stirrups are at first to be fastened across the saddle; when the horse goes quietly, the stirrups may be let down, in order to accustom him to them.

He is now to go through the former longeing lesson; but no attempt to mount him should be made until he becomes reconciled to the saddle.

The Cross.

In order to bring the horse to lift his forehand and carry his head properly in the longe, and to give him a feeling of the snaffle before he is mounted, the cross may be used (particularly with young and weak horses). It must be buckled on with or without saddle, with the same care as in saddling. There should be three buckles at different heights on each upper arm of the cross. The cross reins should be fastened, one end to the ring of the snaffle, on each side, and the other ends to the buckles of the cross; to the highest for those horses whose heads want raising; to the middle one for those horses where the head is naturally well placed; to the lowest for those who carry their heads too high.

The reins should be quite easy at first, and are to be shortened by degrees, and with great care not to gag, or confine the horse too much, or produce a constant and dead bearing on the snaffle. To produce the bend, the rein on the hand to which the horse is longeing, may be one or two holes shorter than the other.

The reins must be altered when longed to the other hand.

Great care must be taken not to press the horse too suddenly up to the snaffle by showing the whip; it must be done by slow degrees and with great gentleness.

Mounting.

When the young horse becomes used to the saddle, and the Instructor finds him sufficiently prepared by the exercises of the
longe, he is to be mounted, in doing which great caution and quietness are necessary; and two men should assist the person who is to mount.

One with the cavesson, facing the horse, is to hold him with the bridle, keeping his head rather high, and engaging his attention; the other, on the off side, should take hold of the stirrup-leathers near the saddle-tree, with the thumb upon the strap and the fingers under it, and by pressing upon it with the elbow at the proper moment, keep the saddle even while the man is mounting.

The man who is to mount (who should at first be without spurs) must proceed with great gentleness, frequently commencing, stopping, and beginning again, until by flattering and caressing the horse between each attempt, he finally seats himself, and takes the snaffle reins in each hand, lightly feeling the horse's mouth.

If the horse has been perfectly quiet during the above operation, he may be carefully led forward and encouraged; the man who leads the horse by the cavesson rein should fix his eyes attentively upon him; and if he perceives any disposition to kick or plunge, must try by gently shaking the cavesson, to keep his head up and engage his attention. The horse should then be led round the circle at a walk; right and left; halted in the centre, caressed, and a few oats given to him.

The man should dismount with the same care and attention; and once more mount and dismount; making much of the horse afterwards. He should then bend his head to the right and left, make him step back a pace or two, and dismiss him.

This lesson should be continued for a few days, until the horse performs it with ease to himself, and allows the man to mount and dismount without the least difficulty. When the horse becomes familiar with the circle, and is accustomed, by the gentle application of the aids, to go forward, to bend, and turn to the right and left, to rein back, and to halt, the cavesson may be taken off, and he may be ridden round the manège, or longeing ground, a man on foot occasionally assisting.

The horse must be confirmed in the walk and trot round the manège. The quicker paces grow out of each other. When the horse walks freely, he is to be pressed into a trot, moderately at first, supported by a light and lively hand; then into a full trot, whenever the Instructor shall think him sufficiently practised in the former lessons.

All aids, with a young horse, particularly in his early
lessons, ought to be as simple as possible, to be easily understood by him. The young horse is now supposed to be, in point of instruction, on an equality with the most tractable of the remount horses when they first join a Regiment.

Section VI.

OF TRAINING HORSES WHICH HAVE BEEN ALREADY RIDDEN.

Remount horses, which have been already ridden, should at first be mounted by practised horsemen, with stripped saddles and snaffle bridles. The best lessons in horsemanship are received in training young horses; and as soon as the Soldier is qualified by previous exercise on formed horses, he should train a young horse properly sized and suited for himself, under due superintendence. This observation is equally applicable to Officers as to soldiers. By this means a mutual attachment is formed between man and horse, which cannot be too much encouraged.

Whenever a horse makes resistance, the saddlery should be carefully examined, in order to find out whether any part of it hurts or tickles him; whether his awkwardness in performing his lesson proceeds from ill temper, weakness of limb, or constitution, or from previous ill treatment; and it must never be forgotten, that it is necessary, at first, to proceed with horses by slow motions and degrees, in order to give them time to understand what is required of them.

Patience and skill hardly ever fail in making a vicious horse tractable: mere force or want of skill and coolness, only confirms him in bad tricks.

The dispositions and capacities of horses are various, and must be carefully studied; the timid encouraged, the impetuous and restive subdued by patience and firmness.

The preparatory lessons for the horse, previous to his being ridden, have been explained in Sect. V.

When the horse has rested a little after the longe, he may be mounted, dismounted, and led on the off, as well as the near side.

The horse should now be ridden at a walk once round the manège, making the corners angular, not round; he may then be made to turn to the right and to the left, across the manège and to change by inclining, ending with going round the
manège: he should then be placed square on his legs, caressed, and dismissed.

These movements, repeated and varied, will be sufficient for a few days, and will prepare the horse for similar lessons at the trot.

The snaffle reins must be held in the hands separately, and somewhat asunder, in order to raise the horse's head and neck: this will also tend to give freedom to the shoulders, and to collect the haunches under him.

The horse must be kept attentive by a light feeling of the bridle, and by a gentle pressure of the calves of the legs, so as to teach him to obey the mouth-piece. The pace must be decided and animated, but not fast.

The horse having gone through a part of his lesson at a walk, to both hands, may be urged to the trot, repeating the turnings, and inclining to the right and left, as in the walk, but varying their order. After the trot he is again walked, halted, made to bend to the right and left, to rein back, to advance, and to halt: he may then be caressed and dismissed.

The trot is a lesson of great importance to the well-training of a young horse, and pains should be taken to confirm him in the free and extended practice of it.

The trot must be moderate at first, and the step true and regular. As the horse improves, he should be made to trot out occasionally restrained by the bridle, and urged by the pressure of the legs, so as to lighten the shoulders and throw the weight more on the haunches: this prepares him to stop, to turn, or to advance with rapidity, and gives ease and grace to all his movements.

In all lessons, whether at a walk or trot, the pace of the horse must be firm, regular, and even; he should be made to look to the inside, and bend, in some degree, to the hand to which he works; this is done by shortening the inward rein in the degree required.

The halt is a material part of the lesson, and may be repeated advantageously if done with judgment.

It assists in bringing the horse's haunches under him, and in making him attentive to the rider, by whom, at the same time, he should be somewhat animated.

After the halt, it is proper to rein back. It must be done with great caution, and very slowly: the rider must not at first raise his hands, as it would throw too much weight on the quarters, for which the horse must be prepared by degrees.

In advancing, after reining back, the horse's head must be
kept up; he must be pressed forward in order to make him bring his haunches under him.

It must be a general rule never to break or depress the noble and generous spirit of the animal, by continuing this lesson until he grows dull and tired, and his strength and wind fail him; caresses and signs of approbation on the one hand, and occasional excitements on the other, are the proper means of calling forth all his exertions. By the former, everything may, in general, be done, with the advantage of having all his movements executed with activity and vigour, and the natural progress of his improvement continued without interruption.

Chastisement may occasionally be necessary; but it need very seldom be resorted to with horses placed in skilful hands: it should never be used except with perfect coolness and deliberation, and not until the Instructor has satisfied himself that the horse knows what is required of him, that no natural defect, or other cause, prevents his ready obedience; nor until the more gentle methods have failed.

The bend proper for a young horse begins from the poll of the neck, so that the rider can see the horse’s inward eye, and that the forehead and nose of the horse be nearly up and down, in a perpendicular line. If the nose were drawn more towards the breast, it would confine the motion of the shoulders, and produce other bad consequences.

The horse must not be kept long on the bend. The upper joint of the neck, being unaccustomed to so great a turn, must be brought to the bend by degrees;—it is equally necessary that he should be unbent very gradually and carefully; if this were to be done suddenly, or roughly, he would probably resist the bend the next time, or would not yield to it without difficulty.

As soon as a horse bends kindly to the inward rein, he will make much progress in the pliancy of every part of the body, in each succeeding lesson.

The Shoulder in helps to supple the shoulders, and to dispose the horse to draw his haunches under him.

When he is properly bent in “Shoulder in,” his whole body from head to tail is curved, and he will move in two lines parallel to the side of the manège, and always at the same distance from them; the shoulders leading; the inward crossing over the outward leg.

When this exercise is practised in the riding house, the horse should move so that his hind legs may be a full yard clear of the boards, in order to give space for his action, and to prevent accidents.
A horse that is dull and heavy in this lesson must not be hurried; by repeatedly turning him into file, and then resuming the "Shoulder in," he will gradually learn what is required, and obey more readily.

When the horse has been duly prepared by the previous lessons of "Shoulder in," he may commence the half passage from the incline.

In this exercise he should only be required to half cross his legs, placing one foot before the other, advancing at the same time that he moves sideways; it is an introduction to the full passage, in which one leg crosses over the other, and the movement is sideways only.

The motion of the horse's legs in "Passaging" is the same as that in "Shoulder in," but the head is turned differently. In the "Shoulder in," the horse looks the contrary way to that in which he moves; in the "Passage," he looks the way he is going, and follows the leading rein, his shoulders preceding his haunches, the body placed obliquely on the lines on which his legs are moving.

When the horse has been taught to "Trot" freely, and has become familiar with the lessons of "Shoulder in" and "Passaging," he may be trained to the "Canter" and "Gallop."

As far as relates to the general action of the horse, the "Canter" is the same as the "Gallop," whether it be the short collected step of the manège, or the extended pace of the charge; there is this difference, however, which distinguishes them, viz.,

In the "Canter," the horse's forehand is raised, his whole figure is collected and shortened, his neck bowed, and his head drawn in, and he moves by the spring of his haunches.

In the early lessons, the "Canter" of a young horse is generally long and loose, but by practice and good riding, it will gradually become short and collected. After the practice of the trot, the horse should be caressed, and permitted to breathe a little, he should then resume the "Trot" (which should be short and collected,) and at the corners he should be raised before, and at the turn pressed into the "Canter;" he will seldom fail, if urged at the right moment, with a stronger pressure of the outward leg, and a double feeling of the inward rein, to lead with the inward leg. This, like other lessons, must proceed by degrees. At first cantering round the manège will be sufficient. In the change by inclining, when arrived within a few paces of the opposite line of the manège, the young horse must be pulled up and brought to the "Trot," and
the "Canter," resumed at the next corner, when, if the aids be well timed, he will lead with the inward legs; the horse should afterwards be made to halt, to rein back, and to move forward; he may then be caressed and dismounted.

When the horse is confirmed in the Canter, and has been taught to obey the aids in "Shoulder in" and "Passaging," he may with ease and safety be made to turn across the manège at the "Canter," without altering his pace.

The horse must then be taught to circle, beginning at a walk; the "Circle" being at first large, and made smaller by degrees.

When the horse has a firm, even, and "cadenced"* pace, at a walk in circle, he may be pressed into a gentle "Trot," and then into a "Canter," which is to be shortened and collected by degrees, though never so as to affect the spring and freedom of his action.

In the circle, the hind to follow the track of the fore-feet; if the haunches are thrown within the circle too much, a strain will be thrown on the hind-quarters; if the haunches are thrown without the circle, too much strain will be laid on the shoulder.

The greatest care must be taken to avoid both these faults.

**Bitting.**

The horse being obedient to, and well bent and collected with the snaffle, he may next be bitted. (See Sect. II.)

A formed horse must be ridden on the bit entirely; but on first bitting, the bridoon is to be used in aid, and to bring him to the bit by degrees.

At first the bit-rein to be held loosely without feeling the mouth,—the bridoon only to be used as a snaffle. Afterwards the bridoon-rein is to be taken through the left hand into the right, and by feeling the bit gently with the bridle-hand, the horse is to be made to step back, and encouraged when he obeys.

Next, in Shoulder in, the inward bit-rein may be felt till he yields to it and bends.

---

* "Cadenced" means that the time passed in making each step shall be exactly equal. The rider will get a habit of judging correctly of the cadence, by repeating to himself: 1 for the first step, 2 for the second, 1 for the third, 2 for the fourth, and so on, 1 2, 1 2, 1 2, for the length of the manège, or round the circle; if the periods between 1 and 2 are unequal, the pace is not well cadenced.
Also the horse being halted by the wall, may be bent by a light play with the inward bit-rein.

At length, the bit alone may be used; but the right hand should for some time be ready to assist, by supporting with the bridoon-rein, if the horse is uneasy with the bit.

Where a horse continues uneasy and fretful with the bit for a long time, the mouth-piece is most likely ill suited to him, and should, if possible, be changed;* or it may proceed from his not having been sufficiently prepared with the snaffle; in which case the snaffle should be resumed, and the bitting put off a little longer.

Accoutrements and Baggage.

When the young horse has become used to the bit, and goes through his lesson without being annoyed by it, he must gradually be accustomed to be ridden with the sword and other accoutrements and saddlery, in “Field Day” and “Marching Order.”

Great caution must be used in putting on the baggage: this should first be done a few times in the manège, the valise being only lightly stuffed with hay, and the weight of the necessaries added by degrees.

Leaping.

At first a young horse should be led over the bar lying on the ground till he passes over it without alarm.

The bar may then be raised by degrees, and he will, by encouragement, learn to leap coolly in hand, from two to three feet in height.

If impatient in going up to the bar, he should be halted, reined back, halted, and tried again, till he leaps coolly: if allowed to hurry or rush, he will become an uncertain and unsafe leaper.

When he leaps well in hand standing, he may be ridden over the bar at a moderate height, the same method being taken to prevent rushing.

When perfect in this, he may be put to the leap at a “walk,” “trot,” and “canter,” leading sometimes with the off,

* Each Regiment should have a few bits with different and easy mouthpieces and curbs, for the purpose of being used for any young horses which have delicate feelings in the bars and under jaw-bone.
sometimes with the near leg. When he has leaped well once or twice at most, encourage and dismiss him.

Practice of Paces for Manœuvre.

After the young horses have been supplied by the collected trot and canter, which bring all the muscles into play, and teach them to yield to the slightest motion of the hand, the pace of manœuvre must be constantly practised. In the riding house, the pace must not exceed seven miles at the trot, and nine miles at the gallop, as from want of room, and the quick succession of turns at the different angles of the school, a more rapid pace would expose men and horses to accidents; but it must always be borne in mind that the rate of manœuvre is the pace required of the regiment in the field: therefore, as soon as the Recruit has learned the management of the horse, and the young horses have finished their training, they should be practised according to the directions laid down in the movements of Cavalry, to pass over a quarter of a mile, marked out for the purpose, in one minute and forty-six seconds for the trot of eight and a half miles an hour, and for the gallop of eleven miles an hour, in one minute and twenty-two seconds. A good-sized open manège will occasionally afford the Instructor the opportunity of practising these most essential paces.

Of Sights and Sounds.

Young horses must be gradually accustomed in the manège to drawing and returning swords, the sword and lance exercises, drums, and firing, both mounted and dismounted.

The horse, being naturally afraid of these things, must not have his terror added to by harsh treatment. Patience, and gentleness being used, and the horse finding that these sights and sounds do him no injury, and are not accompanied by chastisement, he soon becomes familiarised with them, and sees and hears them without alarm. One minute's loss of temper, or violence, in the rider, may throw the horse back for a month.

In all practice with arms, at first, suddenness of movement should be avoided, and every thing be done smoothly and quietly.

To use the horse to firing, a cap should be snapped at the end of each lesson, for some days, and a little corn given to him, after it, and then firing the pistol daily, giving a handful of corn after it, will generally succeed in preparing him for firing in the ride.
When the horse is steady to arms and firing in the school the same method should be tried in the barrack-yard or open manège.

Mode of Swimming a Horse.

Occasions may occur on service where a Dragoon may be obliged to swim his horse; the rider should take up and cross his stirrups to prevent the horse from entangling himself with them; he should quit the bit reins and scarcely feel the bridoon, and any attempt to guide the horse must be done by the slightest touch possible. He should lean his chest as much over the horse's withers as he can, throwing his weight forward and holding the mane to prevent the rush of the water carrying him backwards. If the horse appears distressed, a man who cannot swim may with safety hold the mane, and throw himself flat on the water, thereby relieving the horse from his weight. When the horse comes into his depth, he may again get back to his saddle.

Section VII.

ELEMENTARY INSTRUCTION FOR FIELD EXERCISE.

When the recruits and remount horses have been sufficiently instructed to enable them to work at close files, the Riding-master will direct them to be exercised after each lesson, in some elementary part of the Field Movements, in single and double rank, according to the principles laid down for the Instruction of the Troop and Squadron, so as gradually to fit them for riding in Squadron, as far as the open manège, or any convenient ground, will permit, so that the men may be capable of—

"Dressing" correctly to either hand.

"Telling off by Fours."

"Mounting and dismounting in double ranks and close files."

"Wheeling by fours to the right or left, or about."

"Moving, covering correctly, and keeping distance, in column of fours."

"Fronting."

"Advancing or retiring by fours from either flank, " Forming to the front," " to the reverse flank," and " to the right or left about."

"Filing to the front, or rear," and "to the right or left."

"Forming to the right or left," or " the reverse flank."

"Forming to the front," or " to the right or left about."
"Increasing (on the move) from files to half sections to sections, and to fours; and diminishing (when halted), from the latter to the former."

"Advancing and retiring in line."
"Inclining to the right and left."
"Reining back."
"Passaging to the right and left."

The men must be instructed in the principles of dressing, as laid down in the Instruction of the Troop or Squadron.

**Telling off.**

The ride being formed at the regulated distance of files, the men are to be instructed to tell off by fours, and to prove their tellings off.

"*From the Right, tell off by Fours.*" In telling off by fours, the first file tells off "One," the second "Two," and the third "Three," the fourth "Four," and so on. 1, 2, 3, 4.

The telling off from the left of the division is done in like manner, by the first man on that flank telling himself off "Four."

If the ride or squad be sufficiently numerous, it may be told off in two divisions, according to the Regulations.

The several tellings off are next to be proved.

"*Flanks of Fours, Proof.*" On this command, the men who told themselves off "1 and 4," will quickly stretch out their right hands, their arms on a level with their shoulders, the thumb upwards, and the palm of the hand to the left.

"As you were." The men drop their hands to the usual position. This command is given after proving each telling off.

"Even Numbers, Proof;" "First (or Second) Division, Proof." These tellings off are proved in the same way.

When in double ranks, the front rank only tell off; but the rear rank take up and prove their tellings off with their front file leaders.

**Dismounting and Mounting.**

When the squad is to Dismount, the command is given,

"Prepare to Dismount." The even numbers rein back one horse’s length; they dress to the right; and the whole then proceed with the preparatory motions.

"Dismount." This is performed as directed in the preceding instructions, p. 6.

When the squad is to Mount, the command is given,

"Prepare to Mount." The several preparatory motions are executed in quick succession.
"Mount." This is performed in the manner previously directed (p. 6), and the even numbers move up into line without waiting for a word of command.

**Movements by Fours.**

The squad being formed in close files in single rank, three yards from the side of the manège, told off by fours, and the tellings proved, it is to be explained to the men that, on the first sound of the word,

"Fours Right." Nos. 1, 2, and 3 cast their eyes to the left, 2, 3, and 4 wheel on No. 1, who turns his horse to the right, on the fore feet.

The squad being now in column of fours, right in front, each four dressed correctly to the left, and covering.

"March." The whole move at a walk (unless another pace is named), dressing to the pivot hand. The pivots are answerable for covering and keeping up to the same distance to the file before them, as when dressed after the wheel.

The leading pivot conducts the column, and is answerable for direction and pace.

When the head is within a few yards of the corner of the manège, "Halt."

In changing direction at the corners of the manège it must be explained that the pivot does not halt, but continues in motion, describing part of a circle into the new direction, while the others conform to the movement by a gradual change of direction and quickening their pace, taking care not to fly off from, or press towards, the pivot, and preserving their dressing.

"March," "Left Wheel." At this word, the column commences the change of direction, and when completed, at the word,

"Forward." The pivots move straight to the front, the rest dressing and square.

This being repeated so as to round the two corners of the manège at each end, the squad being arrived at its original position,

"Halt." Dressing of fours, and distance is to be corrected, if required.

"Fours Left." The whole wheel into line, and receive the word "Right Dress."

The command "Dress" includes accuracy of alignment, and correct distance of files from the pivot or dressing hand.

"Eyes Front." The men look straight before them, and all dressing and correction ceases.
The same movements to be made to the right.

"Fours Right," "March." Having ordered a change of direction at the corners of the manège,

"Halt," "Left Incline." Each man turns his horse one-third to the left, on the horse's fore feet, so that Nos. 3, 2, and 1 have their left knee behind the right knee of the man to the left of them. The pivots dress to the right; the threes to their own pivot file. They must, on no account, come before the left-hand man, and must not press upon or fly off from him; each horse to move free and straight on his own line.

"March." Diagonally across the manège.
At the other side of the manège, or before,

"Forward." Each man squares his horse, supporting with the left leg to keep the haunches from flying out, and the column moves forward as before the incline. "Halt."

The shoulder forward or change of direction on the reverse flank is to be explained; that the outer men on that flank circle into the new direction, continuing the same rate of pace, while Nos. 3, 2, and 1 conform to the pivots.

"March," "Right Wheel," "Forward." Having repeated this at three angles of the manège.

"Right Incline," "Forward." Round to the left, till on the original ground.

"Fours Left," "Forward." Across the manège.

"Fours about." "Halt."
It is to be explained that this is always right about, unless specially ordered, "Left About." At the last sound of the word, each four wheels right about on No. 1.

"Eyes Left, March." Across the manège, regulated by the file on the left.

"Halt, Front, Right Dress." The Fours come to the right about, as before, and dress to the right unless otherwise ordered.

Wheel of Fours on the Move.

It is to be explained that, on the move, "Fours Right" being ordered, at the last sound of the word, Nos. 1, 2, and 3 look to the left, and each Four commences wheeling as a division on the fore feet of the horse of the right, advancing and circling to the right till the wheel is completed; and at the word "Forward," the whole advance in column, each Four dressing to the left.

In the same manner on the move, the wheel about will be made by Nos. 2, 3, and 4 wheeling forward and circling to the right, till the wheel about is completed. Their horses in
this case both bent to the right, and the left legs closed to keep the haunches from flying out; the pivot circling his horse’s croup round on the fore-feet with a pressure of the right leg.

The wheel about being completed, at the word “Forward,” the line moves on, dressing to the left.

“Eyes Right, March.” On approaching the side of the manège.

“Fours Right, Forward.” In column by the side of the manège, dressing to the left.

“Fours Right, Forward.” In line across the manège, dressing by the left.

“Fours Right, Forward.” In column by the side.

“Fours Right, Forward.”

“Halt, Dress.” Formed on the original ground.

“Eyes Right, March.” When near the side, allowing for the wheel about.

“Fours About, Forward.” Across the manège.

“Front, Forward, Halt.” On the original ground.

The same movements may all be done at a trot, the Instructor paying great attention to distances being correctly kept. The inclines will be made without any previous halt.

The movements of Fours from the halt, and the change on the moveable pivot, may be done at a canter.

In the canter the half-passage may be done by Fours from the end of the manège, each Four turning to the right in succession in the centre, and performing the half passage by Fours, as is done by files in the riding lesson.

This teaches the men to correct their distances from the dressing point, when at a canter in line, without inclining or altering their squareness to the front.

Fours right and left, on the move, may be done at a canter; but fours about should not be done at that pace.

Passaging at Close Files.

“Right Pass.” The men look to the Right.

“March.” Each man passes to the right, applying the same aids and attention as in the riding lesson, except in the distance of files.

“Halt, Dress.” Each man checks his horse with the right leg, and a feeling of both reins, and dresses to the right, himself and horse square to the front.

“Eyes Front, Left Pass.” On which the men look to the left.

“March.” The same to the left.

“Halt, Dress.”
Reining back at Close Files.

"Eyes Right, March." Across the manège.

"Halt, Rein Back, March." The same aids and attention as in the riding lesson, only the difference of the distance of files. "Halt."

Observations. Wheeling to the right and left, and right and left about; advancing and retiring in line; inclining to the right and left in line; filing from either flank; the various formations from file; and the increase and diminution of front on the move; are all to be practised according to the regulations laid down in the Instruction of the Troop and Squadron. And when two or more Squads are perfect in these movements in single ranks, they should be put together, and the same be practised in double ranks.

It is indispensable, that all Officers of Cavalry should qualify themselves, by a study of the principles and the practice of the foregoing exercises, to give lessons personally to the Troops to which they belong, both in the Single and Double Ride, and in the Elementary Instruction for Field Exercise; so that whenever a riding drill by Troops is ordered, the Officers commanding them may "Exercise and discipline their Troops" in obedience to Her Majesty's commands, and in conformity to the established regulations.

By these means the Officers become acquainted with the powers, fitness, and various qualities of their men and horses; a knowledge most essential in the various and trying situations of actual service.

The practice of giving instruction operates beneficially on the Instructor, who, with the advantages arising from observation and experience, will naturally improve in his practical knowledge and proficiency. The Officer acquires the habit of command, and his men that of obedience to his voice and manner.

These exercises by Troops are calculated for men and horses, who, having gone through the drills prescribed in the first and second parts of Military Equitation, are deemed fit for the ranks; and are intended to preserve and to perfect that knowledge and address which have been previously attained. Without frequent recurrence to these exercises, the best Troops will infallibly lose something of that precision in their movements, which constant practice can alone maintain.
PART THE FIRST.

INSTRUCTION OF THE CAVALRY SOLDIER ON FOOT.

Introductory Remarks.

The several heads of Instruction for Recruits are to be attended to, and carried on, in the manner and order here laid down. The Instructors must possess an accurate knowledge of the part each has to teach, and convey their instructions in such a clear, firm, and concise manner, as will command the men's attention to their directions. They must allow for the awkwardness of the recruit; and must be patient, not rigorous, where endeavour and good-will are apparent; for quickness is the result of practice, and ought not at first to be expected.

Recruits must be carried on progressively; they should be made to understand one thing well before they proceed to another. In the first lessons of positions, the fingers, elbows, &c., are to be placed by the Instructor; when more advanced, they should not be touched; but from the example shown, and the directions given, the men must be taught to correct themselves. Recruits should not be kept too long at any particular part of their exercise, so as to fatigue them too much.

Each recruit must be trained singly, and afterwards in a small squad, until he is well advanced in all points of his exercise.

Section I.

POSITIONS.

The equal squareness of the shoulders and body to the front, is the first and great principle of the position of a soldier. The heels must be in a line, and closed. The knees straight, without stiffness. The toes a little turned out, so that the feet may
form an angle of about 60°. The arms hanging near the body without stiffness; the elbows close to the side, the hands open to the front; the little fingers touching the seams of the trousers. Great care must be taken that the arms are not kept back too much. The belly rather drawn in, and the breast advanced, but without constraint; the body upright, but inclining forward, so that the weight of it may principally bear on the fore part of the feet; the head to be erect, and neither turned to the right nor left.

Open Interval,

Is taken by each recruit stretching out his right arm so as to touch the shoulder of his right-hand man, and keeping that distance from him.

Standing at Ease.

On the word "Stand at Ease," the right foot is to be drawn back six inches, and the greatest part of the weight of the body brought upon it; the left knee a little bent; the hands brought together before the body; and the palm of the right hand slipped over the back of the left; but the shoulders to be kept back and square; the head to the front, and the whole attitude without constraint.

Attention.

On the word "Attention," the hands are to fall smartly upon the outside of the thighs; the right heel to be brought up in a line with the left; and the proper unconstrained position of the soldier immediately resumed.

When the recruit falls in for instruction, he is first to be taught to place himself, on the word "Attention," in the position above described, to remain perfectly silent, and to give his whole attention to his Commander. During the time of his drill, the recruit should be frequently allowed to rest by "Standing at Ease."

When standing at ease for any considerable time, in cold weather, the men should be permitted to move their limbs, but without quitting their ground, so that upon the word "Attention," no one shall have materially lost his dressing in the line.
Section II.

CLUB EXERCISE.

In order to supple the recruit, open his chest, and give freedom to the muscles, he should be exercised in the use of a pair of wooden clubs, two feet in length, rounded and shaped to the hand, and their weight in the increasing proportion of five, seven, and nine pound each, in order that they may be used according to the strength of the men, and their progress in the exercise.

The recruit is placed in the position of "Attention," with a club in each hand, pointing downwards; the hands, arms, and shoulders being perfectly easy and supple, without constraint, in their natural position.

The respective "Practices" are then performed, as follows:

"First Practice—One." Bring the right arm slowly across, and just clear of the body, the end of the club pointing downwards, the knuckles turning inwards, and the elbow well raised; continue the motion, by carrying the hand over the head, on clearing which, the hand and club should gradually fall to the rear, until they resume their position along the right thigh.

"Two." The same motions with the left arm and club.

"Three." The same motions performed alternately, until ordered to "Halt," when the position of "Attention" is resumed.

The preceding Practice may be done either to the right or left, by the word of command, "Right Practice" for the former, on which the left shoulder is brought as much as possible to the front, so as to throw back the right one, keeping the head well turned, and looking to the right rear; the respective motions are then continued by the numbers, "One," "Two," and "Three." The "Left Practice" is performed in the same manner on the left.

"Second Practice—One." By combining the motions of the First Practice, both hands are raised at the same time, and as the arms cross to the front, (having the right one uppermost,) continue the motion so as to raise them over the head, and as they clear each other in doing so, (by the left arm rising over the right,) both hands gradually meet and fall to the rear, resuming the position of "Attention."

"Two." The same, commencing with the left arm uppermost.

In the latter part of this Practice, when the hands have reached the back of the neck, the clubs may be raised to the
full extent of the arms, keeping them together; then lowered again, and the same motions repeated, or the clubs brought down as usual; the heels may also rise and sink with this motion of the arms.

"Three." The two preceding motions ("One" and "Two") alternately, without word of command, until ordered to "Halt," when the position of "Attention" is resumed.

"Third Practice—Carry Clubs." Raise the clubs, well balanced and perpendicular, to the front of the breast, the hands about six inches apart, as high as the elbows, which should be well kept back, and the chest advanced.

"One." Raise the right hand (the left remaining steady) into the hollow of the left shoulder; then, by a quick turn of the wrist and rise of the arm, let the end of the club drop to the rear, continuing its motion round the head, when by the timely lowering of the elbow, the position is resumed.

"Two." The same motion with the left arm, the right remaining steady to the front.

"Three." The two preceding motions ("One" and "Two") alternately, without word of command, until ordered to "Halt," when the hands return to the position of "Carry Clubs."

"Stand at Ease." Lower the clubs as in the first position, and draw the right leg back, as usual, in "Standing at ease."

The object of all these motions is, to supple the joints and strengthen the muscles, without constraining them by any forced positions; and great care should be taken that the position of "Attention" is strictly preserved, having the chest forward and the head well raised from the lower part of the neck; in fact, the head rises and the shoulders sink, in proportion as the bones of the chest are raised.

The easy and supple management of the clubs depends chiefly upon the timely turning of the wrists, and having the clubs well balanced; and by keeping an equal motion (either slow or quick, as may be ordered,) without grasping them too tight, as otherwise the muscles become stiff, and the motions are constrained.

Section III.

GLANCE OF THE EYES IN DRESSING.

"Eyes Right." On the word "Eyes Right," glance the eyes to the right, with the slightest turn possible of the head.
At the word "Eyes Left," cast the eyes in like manner to the left. On the word "Eyes Front," the look and head are to be directly to the front, the habitual position of the soldier.

Particular attention must be paid in the several turnings of the eyes, to prevent the soldier from moving his body, which should be preserved perfectly square to the front. In all marches to the front, the recruit is to be taught to keep his eyes steadily fixed as if looking at some object of his own height at 100 yards' distance in front, and the eyes are never to be cast down, or thrown to a flank, except when ordered. On all other occasions, the touch alone of the recruit must be his guide.

Section IV.

THE FACINGS.

In going through the facings, the left heel never quits the ground; the body must rather incline forward, and the knees be kept straight.

"Right, Face." 1st. Place the hollow of the right foot smartly against the left heel, keeping the shoulders square to the front.
2nd. Raise the toes, and turn to the right on both heels.

"Left, Face." 1st. Place the right heel against the hollow of the left foot, keeping the shoulders square to the front.
2nd. Raise the toes, and turn to the left on both heels.

"Right about, Face." 1st. Place the ball of the right toe against the left heel, keeping the shoulders square to the front.
2nd. Raise the toes, and turn to the right about, on both heels.
3rd. Bring the right foot smartly back, in a line with the left.

"Left about, Face." 1st. Place the right heel against the ball of the left toe, keeping the shoulders square to the front.
2nd. Raise the toes, and turn to the left about, on both heels.
3rd. Bring up the right foot smartly, in a line with the left.

"Right (or Left) Half Face." Each man makes an exact half face, as directed, by drawing back or advancing the right foot one inch, by which the whole will stand individually in echelon.

"Front." The whole face, as accurately as possible, to their former front.

"Right (or Left) About, Three-quarters Face." The recruit brings the ball of the right foot to the left heel, or the right heel to the ball of the left foot, and makes a three-quarters face in the given direction. Upon the word "Front," if he has
faced to the right, he fronts to the left; and if he has faced to the left, he fronts to the right.

The feet, in the first of the above motions, are to be slipped back, or brought forward, without a jerk, the movement being from the hip, so that the body is kept perfectly steady, until faced.

The greatest precision must be observed in these facings, for, if they are not exactly executed, a body of men, after being properly dressed, will lose their dressing, on every small movement, of facing.

Section V.

POSITION IN MARCHING.

In marching, the soldier must maintain, as much as possible, the position of the body as directed in page 66. He must be well balanced on his limbs. His arms and hands, without stiffness, must be kept steady by his sides, and not suffered to swing. He must not be allowed to stoop forward, or to lean back. His body must be kept square to the front and thrown rather more forward in marching, than when halted, that it may accompany the movement of the leg and thigh, which movement must spring from the haunch. The ham must be stretched, but without stiffening the knee. The toe a little pointed, and kept near the ground, so that the shoe-soles may not be visible to a person in front. The head to be kept well up, straight to the front, and the eyes not cast down. The foot, without being drawn back, must be placed flat on the ground.

Balance Step, without gaining Ground.

"Front." The left foot is brought gently forward, with the toe at the proper angle to the left, the foot about three inches from the ground, the left heel in line with the toe of the right foot.

"Rear." When steady, the left foot is brought gently back (without a jerk), the left knee a little bent, the left toe brought close to the right heel. The left foot in this position will not be so flat as when brought to the front, as the toe will be a little depressed.

When steady, the words "Front" and "Rear" will be given alternately, and repeated three or four times; and on the word
"Halt" the left foot, either advanced, or to the rear, is brought to the right.

The Instructor will afterwards make the recruit balance upon the left foot, advancing and retiring the right, in the same manner, taking care not to fatigue him by too much repetition of the motion, without a Halt.

Balance Step, gaining ground by the word "Forward."

On the word "Front," the left foot is brought smartly to the front as before; the knee straight, the toe turned out a little to the left, and remaining about three inches from the ground. In this posture the recruit remains for a few seconds only in the first instance, till practice has steadied him in the position.

"Forward." On this word, the left foot is brought to the ground, at thirty inches from heel to heel, while the right foot is raised at the same moment, and continues extended to the rear. The body remains upright, but inclining forwards, the head erect, and neither turned to the right nor left.

On the word "Two," the right foot is brought forward in a line with the left, the toe a little turned out, and the sole quite flat, but raised two inches from the ground.

On the word "Front," the right foot is brought forward, and so on.

Balance Step in Double Time.

The balance step in double time is performed in the manner last described, but without the word of command for each step, the Instructor merely giving the words "Double Time—March." The recruit judges his own time, going through distinctively the balance of each leg; and when the Instructor observes that he is steady, the time is gradually decreased to the slow step.

In the balance step, the toe is not to be pointed, nor any flourish made with the foot, which is to be placed flat on the ground, without shaking the body.

With a view to determine the exact length of pace required from the recruit in the above movements, the pace-stick must be used to measure and regulate his step, according as the time requires it.
Slow Step.

The length of each pace, from heel to heel, is thirty inches, and the recruit must be taught to take seventy-five of these steps in a minute, without tottering, and with perfect steadiness.

The recruit must be thoroughly instructed in this step, as an essential foundation for arriving at accuracy in the quicker paces. It is the slowest step at which Troops ever march, and is applied to movements of parade.

Halting.

On the word "Halt," let the rear foot be brought upon a line with the advanced one, so as to finish the step which was taken, when the command was given.

Section VI.

INSTRUCTION IN SINGLE RANK.

Three or four recruits will now be formed in one rank, at very open files, and instructed as follows.

Stepping Out.

The squad marches, as already directed, in slow time. On the word "Step Out," the recruit must be taught to lengthen his step to thirty-three inches, by leaning forward a little, but without altering the cadence.

This step is necessary, when a temporary increase of pace is required, and is applied both to slow and quick time: and at the word "Slow (or Quick) Step," the pace of thirty inches must be resumed.

Stepping Short.

On the word "Step Short," the foot then advancing, will finish its pace, and afterwards each recruit will step as far as the ball of his toe, and no farther, until the word "Forward" be given, when the usual pace of thirty inches is to be taken.

This step is useful, when a momentary decrease of pace is required.
INSTRUCTION FOR

Marking Time.

On the word "Mark Time," the foot then advancing completes its pace, after which the cadence is continued, without gaining any ground, but alternately throwing out the foot, and bringing it back square with the other. At the word "Forward," the usual pace of thirty inches will be taken.

Stepping Back.

The "Step Back" is performed in the slow time and length of pace, from the halt. On the command "Step Back—March," the recruit must be taught to move straight to the rear, keeping his shoulders square to the front, and his body erect. On the word "Halt," the foot in front must be brought back square with the other.

A few paces only of the "Step Back" are necessary at a time.

Changing the Feet.

"Change Feet." The advancing foot completes its pace, the ball of the other is brought up quickly to the heel of the advanced one, which instantly makes another step forward, so that the cadence may not be lost.

This may be required when a man is stepping with a different foot from the rest of the squad; to correct which he will in fact take two successive steps with the same foot.

The Quick Step.

The Cadence of the slow pace having become perfectly habitual to the recruits, they are next taught to march in quick time, which is 108 steps in a minute, each of 30 inches, making 270 feet in a minute.

"Quick March." The command "Quick, March" is to be given with a pause between the words; the word "Quick" being considered as a caution, and the whole remaining perfectly still and steady; on the word "March," they step off with the left foot, keeping the body in the same posture, and the shoulders square to the front; the foot to be lifted off the ground, that it may clear any stones, or other impediments in the way; and to be thrown forward, and placed firm; the whole of the sole to touch the ground, and not the heel alone; the knees are to be bent a little, so as not to occasion fatigue or constraint. The arms to hang with ease down the outside of the thigh; the head is to
be kept to the front, the body well up, and the utmost steadiness to be preserved.

After the recruit is perfectly grounded in marching to the front, in quick time, all the alterations of step, as above, for slow time, must be practised in the quick time.

This is the pace which applies generally to all movements, by large, as well as small bodies of troops; and therefore the recruit must be thoroughly trained in this important part of his instruction.

The Side or Closing Step.

The side, or closing, step, is performed from the halt in quick time by the following commands:

"Right Close—Quick, March."

"Left Close—Quick, March."

In closing to the right, on the word "Quick, March," eyes are turned to the right, and each man carries his right foot about ten inches directly to his right (or, if the files are closed, to the next man’s left foot), and instantly brings up his left foot, till the heel touches his right heel, and proceeds to take the next step in the same manner; the whole with perfect precision of time, shoulders kept square, knees not bent, and in the true line on which the body is formed. At the word "Halt," the whole halt, turn their eyes to the front, and are perfectly steady.

Marching Straight Forward.

To march straight forward is of the utmost consequence, and the Instructor will take the greatest pains to make his squad perfect in this essential object: for this purpose he will often place himself behind the flank file by which the squad is to move, in marching; he will then command "March!" and, remaining in his place, will direct the advance of the squad, by keeping the flank file always in a line with the points upon which he has directed him to march. It is also from the rear, that the leaning back of the soldier, and the bringing forward, or falling back of a shoulder, are soonest perceived: faults which, if not instantly rectified, will create irregularity in a line, because one man, by bringing forward his shoulder, may quite change the direction of the march.

In short, it is impossible to labour too much at making the Soldier moving straight forward keep always the same front as when he commenced his march. This is effected by moving solely from the haunches, keeping always the body steady, the
shoulders square, and the head to the front; and it will be attained without difficulty, by a strict attention to the rules given for marching, and a careful observance of an equal length of step, and an equal cadence, or time of march.

"Right (or Left) Turn" must be often ordered on the march, in order to practise the Squad, when moving in file, to front, and move forward, without halting; or, when marching to the front, to move to the flank in file.

"Right (or Left) about Turn" changes the front on the march, without halting. On the word "Turn," each individual soldier, without changing step, or cadence, comes to the right, or left about, on his own ground, and in his own person performing the movement, in the time prescribed for three distinct paces; then marking time, till he receives the word "Forward," when he resumes the full pace to the front.

Inclining.

When the Squad is marching to the front, and it is desired to take an oblique direction, the word "Right (or Left) Incline" is given, and the men move on the oblique lines upon which they are individually placed in echelon, as described in the half-facings. When it is intended to move to the original front, without halting, the word "Forward" is given, when each man will turn his body to the front, and move forward, without checking the pace.

During the "Incline," the dressing is to that hand to which the incline is made; therefore, when a squad is moving by the right half-turn, the right-hand man must pay particular attention to the length of pace, and to move straight on the line he took up when he made his half-turn, as the accuracy of his movement assists very much in keeping the squad in its proper position. The other files must be careful that their right arms do not get beyond the centre of the men's backs who are on their right; and if they keep this position, their right feet will just clear the left feet of the preceding files.

The instruction for the "Incline" should commence in a single rank, without arms.

The Double March.

The directions for the March, already given, apply in a great degree to this step, which is at the rate of 150 steps in the minute, each of 36 inches, making 450 feet in a minute.
On the word “*Double, March,*” the whole step off together with the left feet; keeping the heads erect, and the shoulders square to the front; the knees are a little bent, the ball of the foot only need be brought to the ground. The body is more advanced than in the other marches; the arms hang with ease down the outside of the thigh, as in the quick march. The greatest care must always be taken, that the recruit shall step off at, and preserve, the full pace of thirty-six inches, which can be done with ease, if the soldier is properly placed in position, as directed page 70; and if the weight of the body inclines well forward, on the fore part of the feet.

**Difference of Step.**

The word “*March,*” given singly, denotes that “slow time” is to be taken; when the “Quick” or “Double March” is meant, the word “*Quick*” or “*Double,*” will precede the word “*March.*” Recruits should be much practised in changing the time on the march, except from “Double” to “Slow,” which should never be done without a previous halt.

Three or four recruits in one rank, with intervals of twelve inches between them, should be practised in the different steps, that they may acquire firmness and independence of movement.

**Measurement of Step.**

Plummets, which vibrate the required times of march in a minute, are of great utility, and can alone prevent or correct uncertainty of movement; they must be constantly referred to by each instructor of a squad. The several lengths of plummets, swinging the times of the different marches in a minute, are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>March</th>
<th>In.</th>
<th>Hun.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slow time</td>
<td>75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick time</td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double march</td>
<td>150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A musket ball suspended by a string which is not subject to stretch, and on which are marked the different required lengths, will answer the above purpose, and should be frequently compared with an accurate standard in the Adjutant’s or Sergeant-Major’s possession. The length of the plummet is to be measured, from the point of suspension to the centre of the ball.
Close Order.

Six or eight recruits will now be formed in rank at close files, each lightly touching to the dressing hand, with a steady well-drilled soldier on their flank, to lead, and are to be instructed as follows.

Dressing when Halted.

Dressing is to be taught by the left as often as by the right. On the word "Dress," each recruit casts his eyes to the point to which he is ordered to dress, with the smallest turn possible of the head, but preserving the shoulders and body square to their front; bending backward or forward is not to be permitted. He must take short, quick steps, thereby gradually and exactly to gain his position, and on no account be suffered to attempt it by any sudden or violent alteration, which would derange whatever is beyond him. The faces of the men, and not their breasts or feet, are the line of dressing. Each man must just be able to distinguish the surface of the face of the second man beyond him.

The faults generally committed by the soldier in dressing are, passing the line; the head too forward, and body too much back; the shoulders not square; the head turned too much. To avoid these, the following instructions will be observed:

The two right hand men will be moved up a pace and a half. The Instructor will then give the word "Dress Up," when the third recruit will take a pace to the front, with the left foot, and shuffle up into line with the two men on his right, taking up his touch and dressing at the same time; the Instructor, standing clear to the right of the two men, when he sees that the third is properly dressed, and the touch correct, gives the word "Eyes Front," that heads may be replaced and remain square to the front.

When every recruit individually has practised and is perfect in his dressing-up, both by right and left forward, he must be taught to dress back, by the right and left, in the same manner.

The Instructor will then cause two or three recruits to dress up and back together, taking care that the touch is always preserved, and afterwards the whole squad together.

No rank or body ought ever to be dressed, without the person on its flank appointed to dress it, determining, or at least supposing, a line on which the rank or body is to be formed, and, for that purpose taking as his object a point beyond the distant
or outward flank; dressing must then be made gradually and progressively from the inward flank towards the outer one.

File Marching.

"Right (or Left) Face." The recruits must first face, and then be instructed to cover each other exactly in file so that the head of the man immediately before, may conceal the heads of all the others in his front. The strictest observance of all the rules for marching is particularly necessary in marching by files, which is first to be taught at the "slow time," and afterwards in "quick time."

On the word "March," the whole are to step off together, gaining at the very first step thirty inches, and so continuing each step without increasing the distance between each recruit, every man locking or placing his advanced foot on the ground, before the spot from whence his preceding man had taken up his,—no looking down, nor leaning backward, is to be suffered,—the Leader is to be directed to march strait forward to some distant object given him for that purpose, and the recruits made to cover one another during the march, with the most scrupulous exactness,—great attention must be paid to prevent them from marching with their knees bent, which they will be very apt to do at first, from an apprehension of treading upon the heels of those before them.

Wheeling.

At the word "Right Wheel," "March," they step off together, the whole turning their eyes to the left (the wheeling flank) except the man on the left of the rank, who looks inwards. The outward wheeling man steps the usual pace of thirty inches, and the whole observe the same time, but each man shortens his step in proportion as he is nearer to the standing flank on which the wheel is made: during the wheel, the whole remain closed to the standing flank; that is, they touch without pressing; and on no account stooping forward; opening out from the standing flank is to be avoided; closing in upon it, during the wheel, is to be resisted. On the word "Halt, Dress," each man halts immediately, and dresses to the standing flank. The dressing being completed, the Squad receives the command "Eyes Front."

When the recruits are able to perform the "Wheel" with accuracy in the "slow time," they must be practised in "quick time."
Nothing will sooner enable the recruit to acquire the proper length of step, according to his distance from the pivot, than continuing the "Wheel" without halting, for several circles, and also giving the word "Halt, Dress," at instants not expected, and when only a part of the circle is completed.

**Wheeling Backwards.**

At the words "*On the Right, Backwards Wheel,*" the man on the right of the rank faces to his left. At the word "*Quick March,*" the whole step backwards, in quick time, and observe the same attention as in wheeling forward.

The recruits should be first practised to wheel backwards at the slow step; and at all times it will be necessary to prevent them from hurrying the pace; an error soldiers are very liable to fall into, particularly in wheeling backwards.

Wheeling backwards is only applicable to small squads.

**Changing the Direction upon the March.**

When the rank is marching to the front, and is to change its direction to either flank, it receives the word "*Right Wheel,*" or "*Left Wheel,*" upon which the outward file of the named flank continues to step out at the full pace, and the wheeling is performed, by bringing the shoulder gradually round, and circling on the inward flank file, which marks time until the word "*Forward,*" which is given by the Instructor, as soon as he sees that the rank has gained the direction in which he intends it again to move forward.

---

**Section VII.**

**INSTRUCTION IN DOUBLE RANKS.**

**Formation in Two Ranks.**

The Recruits when thoroughly grounded in the foregoing instructions, will be practised in two ranks, the Rear rank being formed at three paces from the front rank; each man covering correctly, and looking at the middle of the neck of his Front-rank man, to which points his attention must be particularly directed, in all marches and wheelings.

In file marching, in two ranks, the men of the Rear rank
must look to, and regulate themselves by, their Front-rank men. The Squad, when marching in file, must be accustomed to wheel its head to either flank, each file following successively without alteration of distance. On this occasion, each file makes a wheel on a pivot, moveable in a very small degree, but without altering the time of march, or the eyes of the Rear rank being turned from their Front rank.

Section VIII.

PRACTICE OF FIELD MOVEMENTS ON FOOT.

This is a most useful practice, especially for the Instruction of young Officers and Men. The Formation, the Telling off, and the Words of Command, are the same as when mounted, and the same system is pursued throughout.

The Officers are posted three paces in front of the Squadron, and the Rear rank at the like distance from the Front rank. One pace is to be allowed for a horse's length, as far as practicable.

In increasing the front, the "Double Time" is used to represent the "Trot."

Much instruction may be given by Squadron Drills, and also by Regimental Exercises on Foot when, from weather or other reasons, mounted Drills and Exercises may not be convenient.

Field Movements on foot should sometimes be practised with swords and sometimes with carabiners. On the latter occasion it is to be a rule that on the word "Quick March," the men "Support" arms without any special order, and "Shoulder" them when they receive the word "Halt." When marching in column they come to the "Shoulder" at the word to "Wheel," and again to the "Support" on the word "Forward," but when wheeled into Line they remain at the "Shoulder."

Section IX.

POSTING OF SENTINELS.

The Instructor will occasionally post his recruits as sentinels, giving them particular orders and instructions;—that they are not to quit their arms, or walk more than ten yards on each side of their post;—that they are never to talk, loiter, or lounge upon their post, nor remain in their sentry-boxes in
good, nor even in moderate weather, but are to move about briskly, in a soldier-like manner;—that on the appearance of an Officer, they are to stand firm on any part of their walk, paying the compliment due, until the Officer has passed, taking care to front the point they have been told to observe;—that to all Generals and Field Officers they must present their arms; to all other Officers, they are to shoulder arms;—that all guards and sentinels must pay the same compliments to Officers of the Royal Navy and Marines as are directed to be paid to the Officers of the Army, according to their relative ranks;—that although guards do not turn out after sun-set to pay compliments, yet Sentinels, whenever Officers approach their posts, must pay them a proper attention, by standing steady with shouldered arms, facing to their proper front; nor must this be left off until the evening is so far advanced, that they begin challenging and demanding the countersign.

The Sentinel must be instructed to challenge in a clear, sharp tone, pronouncing his words as distinctly as possible. On any one approaching his post, he must challenge them by the words "Who comes there?" and at the same moment "port" his arms; if the person approaching gives a satisfactory reply, he directs him to pass. After the challenge "Who comes there?" should the reply be "Rounds," he must instantly demand "What Rounds?" if answered "Grand Rounds," and he is posted at the guard house, he must turn out the guard, by calling "Guard, turn out," remaining steady on his post till the Officer has received them, and they have passed.

If he is posted elsewhere than at the guard-house, after the reply of "Grand Rounds," he must say, "Stand, Grand Rounds; Advance one and give the Countersign," immediately coming to the "port," in which position he receives the "countersign;" after which he desires them to pass, saying, "Pass, Grand Rounds, All's well," shouldering his arms at the same time, and presenting as the Rounds pass him.

Visiting Rounds are received in the same manner by sentinels.

The duties of sentinels on out-posts before an enemy, beyond that of vigilance on their posts, and a strict attention to the orders that are given them, can only be learned by practice;—they never pay any compliments.

Sentinels posted with shouldered arms may afterwards "support" them.

Corporals marching with reliefs are to be on the right, and carry their arms shouldered.
EXTENT OF FRONT.

Section X.

CALCULATION OF EXTENT OF FRONT.

The number of paces of thirty inches comprised in the front of any Division, or body, is nearly three-fourths of the number of files of which it is composed, and, upon this calculation (the number of files in the Division being once ascertained), the Officer or Non-commissioned Officer commanding it must, on all occasions, recollect the number of paces that are equal to his front.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of files in a Division, each occupying 21 Inches</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>40</th>
<th>50</th>
<th>100</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front of Division in paces of 30 Inches</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8-12</td>
<td>9-24</td>
<td>10-15</td>
<td>11-6</td>
<td>12-18</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Section XI.

FORMATION AND INSPECTION OF THE TROOP.

The men fall in, with supported arms, in single rank.

"Attention." The Troop is to be sized, the tallest man being on that flank which is next the centre in squadron. It is then to be numbered off, and the rear rank, formed by the even numbers stepping back three paces, and the whole closed to the flank. The Troop will be told off in two Divisions, and by Fours, as on horseback.

"Port—Arms." When at "The Port," half-cock and open the breech, holding the breech-block between the forefinger and thumb of the right hand by the thumb-piece and nipple-lump.

The inspecting officer will go down the ranks to see that the breech-shoe and breech-block are free from rust, and otherwise clean, also that the breech-block is free in its action. Each soldier, as the officer approaches within one file of him, will turn the barrel of his carbine full to the front with the left hand, lock downwards, and draw back the breech-block with his right hand.

"Examine—Arms." The carbines to be brought to the "Ready" position, but the muzzle to be as high as the shoulder, to enable the inspecting officer to look through the barrel to see that it is clean and free from rust.

The soldier, when the officer passes the file nearest to him, will close the breech, ease springs, remain at the loading position for the word shoulder arms.
Manner of Dismissing a Troop off Parade.

"Port Arms—Right Face—Lodge Arms." The whole face to the right, and bring their carbines to the "Trail;" the front rank break off to the left, the rear rank to the right, and quit the parade without noise.

N.B. In turning in a guard or picquet, the same mode is to be observed.

Section XII.

TO FIRE A FEU DE JOIE.

The line drawn up at "Order," with shouldered arms.

"With Blank Cartridge, Load." (In quick time.)

"Ready." Carbine to be cocked, and small of the butt grasped with the right hand.

"Present." Elevated in the air.

"Commence firing on the Right." The right hand man of the front rank commences the fire, which will run down the front, and up the rear, as quick as possible. When the right hand man of the rear rank has fired, the whole will glance their eyes to the right, to bring the carbine to the loading position, and when loaded, they will remain steady, waiting for the word,

"Ready—Present." As before directed.

The same to be repeated a third time.

After the third volley come to the loading position, extract the empty cartridge case, shut down the flap, ease springs, and remain for the word "Shoulder Arms—Present Arms—Shoulder Arms," followed by "Three cheers."

Section XIII.

DIRECTIONS FOR FUNERAL PARTIES.

The party appointed for the escort, according to the rank of the deceased, is to be drawn up two deep, with ranks at "Order" facing the place where the corpse is lodged; and when it is brought out, the Officer commanding will give the following words of command:

"Present Arms—Reverse Arms." The right hand strikes the butt of the carbine which is turned upwards; the guard turned towards the body; it is then placed under the left arm, seizing the hammer with the left forefingers and thumb. The right hand is thrown behind the body, and grasps the carbine; the right heel at the same time is brought to its original position.
The Officers' swords are reversed under the right arm: the point of the sword downwards, grasping the hilt with the right hand.

The Ranks are then closed, and the party wheels into Column of Divisions, left in front, until the procession is ready, when it will be marched off in slow time, followed by the music, playing the Dead March.

THE CORPSE.

PALL-BEARERS OF EQUAL RANK WITH THE DECEASED.

CHIEF MOURNERS.

OFFICERS TWO AND TWO.

According to rank, the juniors next to the body of the deceased.

When the first division of the funeral party arrives near the burial ground, the word of command, "Halt," is given, and the Officer commanding will order the ranks of the divisions to wheel to the right and left, having been previously told off for that purpose, and facing inwards, forming a lane for the corpse to pass through.

"Rest upon your Arms Reversed." The carbine is quitted by the right hand, and brought upright; the muzzle placed upon the toes of the left foot. The right hand open is placed upon the butt-end of the carbine.

The soldier's head leaning rather forward, the left hand is brought up to the forehead shading the eyes, stand at ease.

The corpse, &c., having passed through the lane, the word "Attention" is given, on which the soldiers raise their heads, and drop their right arms by their sides.

"Reverse Arms." The ranks are then wheeled up, and move in ordinary time, and form in line in the same order, near to and facing the grave.

The command will then be given,

"Rest upon your Arms Reversed." After the performance of the funeral service, the following words of command are given:

"Attention—Present Arms." Raise the carbine, seizing it backhanded with the left hand at the swell, turning it over with the right hand, and then holding it in the position of "Presented Arms."

"Shoulder Arms — Load with Blank Cartridge." Three volleys are then fired in the air.

After the third volley, "Shoulder Arms." Return to camp, quarters, or barracks, the right in front, quick time.

In marching back, the music is not to play, until the party is entirely clear of the burial ground.
FOOT PARADE OF THE REGIMENT.

Section XIV.

FOOT PARADE OF THE REGIMENT.

The Regiment is formed in Squadrons with the usual intervals of one-fourth; the Troops sized, formed, and told off as laid down for the "Formation of the Squadron;" the distance between front and rear rank is three paces; Squadron and Troop Leaders three paces in front of the front rank, and the Serrefiles three paces in rear of the rear rank both at order and close order.

The Commanding Officer takes post six paces in front of the centre of the line of Officers; the other Field Officers on the right and left flanks of the line of Officers, &c.; the Adjutant and other Staff Officers on the right of the front rank. The Band on the right of the Staff.

"Take Order," "March." The Serrefiles place themselves on a line with the Squadron and Troop Leaders, dividing the ground equally.

On the General or Reviewing Officer arriving in front of the centre of the regiment, the word is given "General Salute," "Present Arms;" Officers salute, Arms are presented, and Music plays according to regulation.

"Shoulder Arms." Officers recover swords with the first motion, and carry them with the second; the inspection of the ranks by the Reviewing Officer will then follow.

"Take close Order," "March." The Serrefiles resume their places as at Close Order.

"By the wheel about of Fours, Column of Troops to the Right.*" "Fours About." "Troops Right Wheel."

"Quick March." The troops wheel to the right, and receive the words "Halt, Front, Dress," from the Squadron Leaders; Troop Leaders then dress their Troops, and take post three paces before the second file from the left. Squadron Leaders and Serrefiles are posted as when mounted.

"March past in slow time," "March." Points will be fixed by the Adjutant for the several wheelings of the Troops; the "Passing line" four paces from the spot where the Reviewing Officer is to be placed; the Marker b at thirty, and c at a similar distance from that spot.

* During the Parade Movements on Foot, the Squadron Leaders do not repeat the Cautions, but this exception does not apply to the "Practice of Field Movements on Foot" in general.
The Column proceeds in slow time, and each Troop wheels at the different angles by the words "Left Wheel;" the right flank man continues to step out at the full pace, the left flank man brings his shoulder gradually round, only gaining sufficient ground to circle round a point, and when the wheel is completed at A, the word "Forward," "Eyes Right," is given by the Troop Leader, who moves during the wheel to the front of the second file from the right. Each troop successively, as it arrives at B, receives the word "Take Order" from its Leader; Squadron Leaders take post three paces in front of the centre of the Right Troops, Squadron Serenfiles in front of Left Troops, Troop Serenfiles in front of second files from the left.

In marching past, the Lieutenant-Colonel is to be in front of the centre of the leading Troop, and the Majors in rear of the column, the senior being in rear of the Adjutant, with the junior on his left; the Band is to be six paces in front of the former, the Adjutant is to be in rear of the last Troop; the Band will begin to play just after the first Troop has wheeled upon the passing Line at A, and after passing the General will draw up as when mounted, and continue to play until the rear of the column shall have passed.

The Officers when they arrive within ten paces of the Reviewing Officer, salute successively by Troops (taking the time from the Officer on the right); after having passed him by six paces, they recover and carry their swords, taking care not to alter the rate of march. The Commanding Officer, after he has saluted, places himself near the Reviewing Officer, and remains until the rear has passed.

When each Troop arrives at C, its Leader gives the word, "Take close Order." The Officers resume their places as at close Order.

After wheeling off the passing Line at D, each Troop receiving the word "Forward—Eyes left," will dress by the pivot flank. When the Regiment has arrived on the Parade Line it is halted.

The caution will then be given—"March past in Quick
time,” “Quick March.” The Column proceeds in “Quick time” without music, wheeling at each angle as before pointed out. After the leading Troop has wheeled on the passing Line at A, the music will begin to play; the Troop Leaders give the words “Eyes Right,” and take post as before. Squadron Leaders are three paces in front of the Right Troop Leaders; the Servfiles remain in the rear as when mounted; the Staff Officers and Band will be posted the same as when marching past in Slow time. The Lieutenant-Colonel to march past in front of the centre of the Leading Troop, the Major in rear of the Column.

When the Column has passed, and is arrived again on the Parade Line, the words are given, “Halt,” “Left wheel into Line.” The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader and Marker of the First Squadron, as when mounted, and the Officers dress upon it accordingly.*

“Quick March.” The Troops wheel into Line, and are dressed to the centres of Squadrons, by the Squadron Leaders. The word is then given, “Eyes Front,” and the Officers resume their posts, three paces before the Front Rank.

If the Manual and Platoon Exercise are to be performed, the words will be given, “Officers take post in the rear;” “Quick March,” Squadron and Troop Leaders move to the Servfile rank. The Major, or in his absence, the Officer next in seniority, will put the Regiment through the Manual Exercise. On the caution “Platoon Exercise,” Squadron Leaders take post on the right of their Squadrons, and the rear rank takes two paces to the front; the Platoon Exercise is then gone through.

“Officers take post in Squadron,” “Quick March.” The Squadron and Troop Leaders resume their posts in front, and the rear rank falls back two paces to its usual distance.

Advancing in Parade Order.—At the end of an Inspection, if required to do so by the General, the Regiment will be formed in line, the Band nine paces in rear of the centre.

On the command “Advance in Parade Order, March,” the Line will advance in slow time, taking “Order” on the march, and halting and saluting when within 30 or 40 paces of the Reviewing Officer, after which it will “Shoulder Arms” and wait for orders.

* On Foot the Alignment is always to be taken up, in the first instance, at six inches from the breasts of the Officers and Markers.
PART THE SECOND.

INSTRUCTION OF THE TROOP AND SQUADRON.

Section I.

TERMS OF FORMATION AND MANŒUVRE.

Division, is the largest body of which Cavalry is composed, and may consist of any number of Brigades.

Brigade, consists of two or three Regiments. Where more than three Regiments are present, a Division is formed, consisting of two or more Brigades.

Regiment, consists of a certain number of Squadrons.

Wing. The right or left half of a Regiment.

Squadron, is composed of two Troops. Squadrons are numbered from the Right.

Troop, is composed, when Squadrons are 48 File, of two Divisions. Troops are called "Right" and "Left."

Division, is the half of the Troop. Divisions are numbered 1, 2, 3, 4, from the right.

Fours. Eight men abreast. Four front rank and four rear rank.

Sections. Four men abreast. The Front Rank Section covered by its Rear Rank Section.

Half-Sects. Two men abreast. The two right men of front rank covered by their rear rank, then the two left men of front rank covered by their rear rank.

A File. Two men—front rank man covered by his rear rank.

A Rank. Two or more men in Line.

Files. This term is made use of to denote the strength of the frontage of a body of Troops. Thus a Squadron of 48 files means that there are 48 men in the front rank, the strength of the Squadron being 96.
Rank and File, also denotes the strength of a body of Troops. Thus a division of 3,000 Rank and File means that the Division is of that strength, exclusive of Officers and supernumeraries.

A Line. Bodies of Troops placed side by side.

A Column. Bodies of Troops placed behind each other. The term Column or Open Column implies that such amount of interval (between each body) is taken, as that the length of the Column shall represent the frontage when wheeled into line.

Column of Manoeuvre. This term embraces the Columns of Bodies having Leaders (Squadrons and Troops).

Column of Route. Cols. of Fours, Sections, Half-Sections, and Files; also a Column on the Line of March.

\( \frac{1}{4} \) Distance Column. The Column closed up; 3 horses' clear interval between rear rank and front rank of Squadrons.

Close Column. Vide Sect. xii. 10, p. 198.


Contiguous Column. A line of two or more Regiments in \( \frac{1}{4} \) Dist. Column.

Column en Masse. A Column of two or more Regiments in \( \frac{1}{4} \) Dist. Column.

Direct Echelon, is when the Line is broken into several parts, moving direct to the Front or Rear, in succession, thus:

\[ \text{______} \]

Oblique Echelon, is when the Line is broken into several parts by wheels from Line or Column, less than the quarter circle, so as to be oblique to the former front, and parallel with each other, thus:

\[ / / / / / \]

Inverted Line or Column, is where Squadrons are transposed in Line. The Right being on the Left, and vice versâ, or in Column of Troops when the Left Squadron is
leading with its Right Troop in front. N.B.—A Column of Squadrons cannot be inverted.

Alignment. The Line between two given points, or in prolongation of two points given as a base.

New Alignment. The Line on which the Column is marching, after it has wheeled, or changed its direction.

Formation. The act of a body placing itself in position.

"Form." This term is in general use, indicating that the body to which it applies is to "Form" according to the rules laid down for its particular case.

Deployment. The Formation of Line to the Front from Quarter Distance Column. A Column en Masse forming continuous Column to the Front is also a Deployment, but the term is not made use of in command in this case.

Pivot. The Flank man on whom a body wheels.

Fixed Pivot. When the pivot man during the wheel turns upon his own ground.

Moveable Pivot. When during the wheel he describes a portion of a circle.

Flank. The outer man of any body of men. Also the direction to either hand of a body moving.

Pivot or Directing Flank. The Flank of a Column nearest to the proper front. Therefore, when Right is in front, the Left is the Pivot Flank, and v. v.

Reverse or Outer Flank. The other Flank.

Point of Formation. A fixed object or marker, on which a Formation commences.

Base. Two men placed at a distance apart, on which depends the proper frontage of a Line, or covering of a Column. "Alignment Base" is the term used in the former case; "Covering Base" in the latter.

A "Base" body is that on which a formation is made; or when in movement, that on which the dressing is, thus—"Base Regiment," "Base Squadron."

Fixed Base. Standing base on which the formation is made.

Moveable Base. The base on which the dressing depends in movement.

Front. The direction towards which the body looks when formed.
Rear. The opposite direction to Front.

Extent of Frontage. The distance between the outer Flank men of any formed body.

Depth. Distance from Front to Rear.

Distances. The Space between bodies from Front to Rear.

Intervals. The Space between bodies from side to side.

A Horse’s Length. A term of measurement (8 feet).

Change of Front. The throwing forward of either Flank of a body on a fixed Base.

Change of Position. A Line moving and re-forming altogether off its ground, either to Front or Rear; either square to the former Front, or with a flank thrown forward.

Reversal of Front. The ranks or wings of a body, changing places and fronting the opposite way to which it did before the movement.

Countermarch. A mode of reversing the Front.

Close Order. The ordinary distance between Front and Rear Rank.

Order—or Open Order. The increased distance taken by the Rear Rank on occasions of Parade.

Dressing. The act of correctly aligning on a base.

When the term "Dress" is used it is the correction of an imperfect dressing; when "Dress up" it is for a Rank to move up to and dress by another formed line.

Covering. The act of a body placing itself correctly in rear of another.

Inclining. A movement by which ground is gained to the front (or rear) and flank at the same time, in a parallel direction.

Passaging. Gaining ground to a flank only, by moving sideways.

Reining Back. A horse stepping backwards.

Advancing. Gaining ground to the Front only.

Retiring. Gaining ground to the Rear only.

Oblique March. Gaining ground to Front and Flank simultaneously.

Flank March. Gaining ground to a Flank only.
Wheeling or Shoulders Forward. A body bringing forward a Flank and degree of a circle.

"Right" or "Left." These terms are used instead of Right or Left Wheel, when less than the quarter-circle is to be wheeled.

Paces. The denomination of different degrees of speed.

March. The word or sound for putting a body of Troops in motion from the halt.

Forward. Ditto, after a wheel or incline, when in motion.

Halt. The word or sound for making a body in motion stand still.

Eyes Front. This word is given to denote that the operation of dressing is completed; that eyes are to be fronted, and that all Leaders and Markers are to assume their proper positions and places.

Eyes Right, or Left. This word is given when a change of dressing is required during a movement; also—generally to denote the hand to which is the proper dressing.

Eyes Centre. This word is given when the dressing is to the Centre.

Markers. Officers or Non-commissioned Officers employed to give bases.

Guides and Assistant Guides. Vide Part II. Sect. XII., 6, 7.

Body of Direction, is the body on which the dressing or direction of the rest depends.

Leaders. Commanders of bodies.

Serrefiles. Supernumerary Officers, as detailed. The line of Serrefiles embraces also the whole line of supernumeraries in rear of rear rank (Trumpeters, Farriers, Markers, &c.)

Field A.D.C.'s. Regimental: Officers temporarily attached to Division and Brigade Leaders.

Skirmishing. An engagement with fire-arms in extended files.

Alarm Post. The place (previously indicated) where troops assemble when ordered to turn out suddenly.
Parade Movements. The reception of, salute to and marching past, a Reviewing or Inspecting Officer.

Parade Movements.

Flag-Staff. Position of Reviewing Officer during the Parade Movements.

Mem.—Though a flag-staff is seldom used, except on State occasions, this term is used to imply the Centre of the Passing Line.

Parade Line. The Line of original Formation, from which the Reviewing Officer is received and saluted.

Passing Line. That opposite the Parade Line; the centre of which is the Reviewing Officer's Post.

Section II.

DISTANCES AND INTERVALS.

Distances.

1. The strength of the Division in this Book, when in two Lines, is 2 Brigades of 3 Regiments (or 12 Squadrons) each.
   The strength of the Brigade is generally 3 Regiments (or 12 Squadrons) each.
   The strength of the Squadron is 48 File, but as the standard makes it 49 File, all measurements are made (to facilitate calculation) at 50 File.

2. A horse's length is reckoned at 8 feet,
   A horse's breadth 3 feet (1 yard),
   including the six inches from knee to knee of the riders.
   The body of four men, termed a Section form a perfect square, thus—

   \[
   \begin{align*}
   \text{Length of horse} & \quad 8 \\
   \text{Distance in his front 2 feet} & \quad 4 \\
   \text{" rear 2 "} & \quad 4 \\
   \hline
   \text{12 feet.} & \quad 12 \text{ feet.}
   \end{align*}
   \]

Supposing that from a Direct Echelon an oblique Line (half right) is formed, on the right of Squadrons, there would be treble intervals between the Squadrons. Therefore, if such an ulterior formation were contemplated, the distance between Squadrons in the Direct Echelon should be rather less than their frontage (and without interval).
3. Intervals.

Intervals are measured as from knee to knee.

**IN LINE.**
- Between Files - Six Inches.
- Half Open Files - Eighteen Inches.
- Open Files - One Yard.
- Squadrons - One-fourth of their Frontage.
- Regiments - The same as between Squads.
- Brigades - Double Squadron interval.
- Brigades in Cont. Col. - Do.
- Cont. Column of Cols. en Masse - Do.

**IN CONT. COL.**
- Regiments - Same as in Line of Regiments.

**IN DOUBLE COL.**
- Troops or Squadrons - Squadron interval.

**IN COL. OF FOURS.**
- Front and Rear Rank - ¼ horse's length.

**DEMI-SECTS.**
- The two men - ½ horse's length.

4. Frontage.

The extent of Front of a body of Troops is as many yards as it contains files.

In calculating the frontage of a Regt. of 4 Squads: three intervals of one-fourth frontage must be reckoned.

Thus, a Regt. of 4 Squads: of 50 file, would be,—

4 Squadrons + 3 intervals = 237½ yards.

5. Distances.

Distances are measured as from head to croup.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Horses' Lengths</th>
<th>Yard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>IN LINE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front to Rear Rank, Close Order</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COLUMN OF ROUTE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From one horse to another</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MANOEUVRE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From one Body to another</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DIST. COLUMN</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One Squadron to another</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COLUMN EN MASSE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One Regiment to another</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RIGHT OF FOURS TO FRONT FILE</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. Depths.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Horses' Lengths</th>
<th>Yards</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In Line</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Two Ranks, Close Order</td>
<td>3 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- - Leaders and Serrs. included</td>
<td>7 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- - Open Order</td>
<td>5 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- - Leaders and Serrs. included</td>
<td>9 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Col. of Maneuvre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- - - - Same as extent of Front.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>¼ Dist. Column</th>
<th>(4 Squadrons)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A Squadron of 48 File, would take up</td>
<td>In File -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from Head to Rear of the Column</td>
<td>Demi Sect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(½ horse’s length distance between Ranks)</td>
<td>Section -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depth from Div. Leader to Rear Rank at Order in Line</td>
<td>Fours -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- - - Rear Squad. at Cont. Cl. Col.</td>
<td>144 384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- - - 142 192</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- - - 36 96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- - - 18 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- - - 100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- - - 90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Intervals or depths for Band, &c. when in Line must be added for Parade Movements.

Section III.

DIRECTIONS FOR INSTRUCTORS.

1. The first drills of recruits should be in small squads in single rank, not exceeding twelve men in each, under an intelligent Non-commissioned Officer. All general directions and explanations should be short and clear; the repetition of them, after they have been understood, should be avoided; and the Instructor must be careful to distinguish awkwardness and ignorance from wilful inattention. When fault is to be found, the man who is to blame should be spoken to without harshness, but decidedly, and so that all the squad may hear. Any man who is idle and careless in the ranks, should be reported and punished afterwards; but moderation must be observed in reprimanding men when under instruction.

2. At the drills, due allowance must always be made for young, unsteady, or violent horses. If the men be blamed for their horses' faults, they become impatient with them, and confirm them in their bad habits, which, by gentleness, and by
not requiring too much exactness of movement from them at first, can almost always be overcome.

3. Short halts should take place at intervals, the order being given to sit at ease; the men should also be dismounted, at least once, during the drill. The soldier whose attention is not fatigued, will take the greater pains, and make the more rapid progress in consequence.

---

**Section IV.**

**DRESSING.**

Dressing is a progressive operation upon two men placed in a determined straight line, by which any number of men are correctly aligned on them.

1. It is indispensable that, in movement, this base should be exactly square, to preserve the parallelism of the line; and when halted, it must be regulated with equal precision, for the same object. The first and second Files on the "Standing Flank" being first truly placed, the others then rapidly and successively conform to them; and the men must be habituated to line themselves readily on the given points, without being called to by the Instructor.

2. The first principle of dressing, either halted or in movement, is, the perfect squareness of the man and horse. The next is, that each man should see the surface, but no more, of the second man's face from him. To do this, he must sit upright on his horse, and never gain the line by leaning backward or forward. When halted, he may turn his head, in a very small degree, towards the dressing hand; but when in movement, except when "Marching Past," the head must be kept perfectly square to the front; the glance of the eye only, should secure the dressing.

3. During the dressing the proper distance of Files must also be attended to, and corrected.

4. The word "Dress" means to the hand to which the men are then looking; but when the dressing is to be to a different point, it will be expressed by the words "Eyes Right," "Eyes Centre," or "Eyes Left."

5. The Squadron, and all other bodies, till otherwise ordered, dress to the hand to which they form, except in a Formation to the pivot hand, after a flank movement by Files or Fours, when the dressing is to the "leading Flank." As soon as the Squadron is formed in line, the eyes are to the centre.
6. When the Dressing is finished, the word "Eyes Front" must be given.

7. On the march, Dressing is to the hand to which it was when halted, or to that which becomes the Pivot, or Directing hand; and it is a rule that when the Right is in front, the Left is the Pivot, or Point of dressing and covering, and vice versa.

8. On the Halt, Dressing is to the same hand as it was on the march.

9. In the Formations from Column of Fours, or Half Sections, (right in front) to the left (pivot) hand, the Dressing does not alter to the right, till each Four or Half Section is actually arriving at those already formed; but in Formations to the Front, or to the Reverse Flank, the Dressing changes to that Flank, on the caution to "Form."

10. In Formations from Column of Divisions or Troops to the Reverse Flank, the Dressing changes at the Caution, and Troop Leaders shift their posts accordingly.

11. When the Squadron moves in line, the Dressing is to its centre.

Section V.

MARCHING TO THE FRONT.

1. One of the most necessary instructions for preparing the soldier to act in squadron, is the method of marching perfectly straight, by keeping in one line two objects, such as tufts of grass or stones, at some distance on the ground before him (see fig. 1); and for this purpose each man is to be successively placed on the directing flank; but at first a trained soldier must be placed on both flanks, for this practice.

2. On the words "Eyes right, March," the whole move forward.

The flank man must be cautioned never to move with suddenness or hurry, and the steadiness of his pace must be greatly attended to.

The men must be taught to correct the distance of files, as gently and quietly as possible, and
much more by the leg than by the hand. Gradual correction of dressing and distance is, the chief principle of good movement.

3. The Points of direction must be occasionally changed to the right or left (see fig. 2), to teach the men to close their files, or to yield to the pivot hand, it being a general rule to give way to any pressure from the dressing hand, but to resist it from the other.

4. The Instructor must sometimes direct the flank man in a low voice, to go faster or slower, observing that the rank conform in their dressing without suddenness or hurry.

5. After the "Halt" the men are to remain steady; if the word "Dress" follows, they quickly take up their line from the flank to which they are to dress. And to instil the practice of dressing, the two men on the flank are directed to advance a horse's length: and at the words "Eyes Right," or "Eyes Left,"—"Dress up," each man successively dresses up to them. Dressing back must be practised exactly in the same manner.
Section VI.

INCLINING.

INCLINING is a movement by which the Squadron is carried forward in a parallel direction, at the same time that it is gaining ground to the flank. It is of great use for correcting irregularities in Marches to the Front.

1. At the order to "Incline," each man causes his horse to turn on his forefeet, about one-third towards the flank, so that his knee comes rather behind the knee of his next leading file; and the whole look to the hand to which they are to incline. The Rear rank moves in the same manner, and is regulated by the Front rank, which it conforms to; and thus the horses' heads of the Rear rank will be directed in rear of the second man from their leader, toward the hand inclined to.

2. The Non-commissioned Officer (Guide) on the leading flank, having ascertained his points, marches steadily upon them. Each man moves on so many parallel lines, with respect to him, and preserves the same uniformity of front and files, as when he first turned his horse's head.

3. Great care is to be taken, that the whole move at the same pace, and quicken, or slacken, together, as ordered. If the flank which is not leading is too forward, the centre will be crowded; if it is too backward, the Squadron will be too much in file.

4. When the word "Forward!" is given, the Squadron (by each man, at the same instant, turning his horse) should be formed in a direction perfectly parallel to its former front.

5. The distance of files, at six inches, allows the Squadron to incline in perfect order, while its new direction does not exceed an angle of 34° with respect to its former one; this angle, therefore, must be carefully maintained in the "Incline."

6. No horse must be allowed to cross his legs or passage in inclining, but each is to move in a straight line, at the angle above mentioned.

7. Ground to the Front and Flank may also be simultaneously gained by the partial wheel of Fours.

The same general rules apply as laid down for the incline, the Commands being "Fours Half Right" or "Half Left" and "Forward."

8. It is recommended that as a rule this oblique movement be executed by the half wheel of Fours, especially if the movement be a long one, though if the obliquity be at 30° or less, it may be effected by the Incline.
Section VII.

PASSAGING AND REINING BACK.

"Passaging" and "Reining back" are lessons of the manège, and are necessary in opening or closing of Ranks, Files, or Intervals of Squadrons.

When ground is to be taken to the flank by passaging, the whole body moves at the word \[ \begin{cases} \text{"Right"} \\ \text{"Left"} \end{cases} \] *Pass! March,* until it receives the word "*Halt!*"

In "Reining back," the whole look to the hand to which they ought to form or dress; the movement is never to be hurried; and the horses are to be kept straight.

Section VIII.

WHEELING.

WHEELING is one of the most essential and important exercises of the Squadron.

The following table shows the different degrees of wheeling, and the words of command for each:

1. Wheeling should at first be practised in Single Rank, beginning with small Divisions, next increasing to a Troop, and lastly to a Squadron. When the men can wheel correctly in single rank, the rear rank is to be added.
2. The different degrees of "Wheel" must be performed at first from the halt, that they may be well understood by the men; afterwards they should be much practised on the move.

3. For attaining good dressing and steadiness, wheeling the whole circle to either hand, with occasional halts, is an excellent practice. When unsteadiness is observed, the men must be halted just as they happen to be at the moment, and the fault pointed out, and corrected.

4. All "Wheels" of the Squadron or its parts, from the halt, are to be made on a flank.

5. During the Wheel, Dressing is to the "wheeling" flank, and distance of files is preserved from the "standing" flank. The Pivot man turns his horse on his fore-feet, keeps his ground, and comes gradually round with his rank. The outward flank man looks to his rank, regulates the pace at which the wheel is made, and conducts the flank, so as to avoid crowding on the rank, the men resisting pressure from the outward, but giving way to pressure from the inward flank. All the horses' heads must be kept rather outward, and the croups lightly pressed inwards with the leg. The rear-rank men at the standing flank, must rein back, and partly passage and incline towards the wheeling hand, in order to cover.

6. In wheels upon the move, the wheeling flank moves about one half faster than the rate at which the body is marching.

7. In wheels upon the move, of less than the quarter circle, the Pivot only checks and turns his horse during the wheel, and resumes his former pace on the word "Forward."

8. In Wheels upon the move, of a degree amounting to the quarter circle, or more, the Pivot halts, and turns his horse during the wheel, resuming his former pace on the word "Forward."

9. After wheeling into Line from Column, Dressing is to the centre of the Squadron (see fig. 1.); and also after the Squadron wheels about, reverses its front, or counter-marches in line.

10. After wheeling into echelon, the dressing, at the word "Forward," is to the inward hand. (See figs. 2 and 3.)
11. After wheeling about or countermarching Divisions, Troops or Squadrons, in column, the dressing is to whichever flank has become the Pivot. (See fig. 4.)

12. When there is no "Halt" after wheeling into column, the dressing is to the Pivot. (See fig. 5.)

13. In the movement of a Column of Troops, or Divisions, when a wheel of the quarter circle is to be made in succession, the word "Forward" is given, as soon as the wheel is completed.

14. Wheels made on a halted, or on a moveable Pivot. Wheels of the Squadron, or its parts, are made on a halted, or on a moveable Pivot. Those on a halted Pivot are made from Line into Column or from Column into Line; and generally by the Column of manœuvres, when moving on a considerable front. Wheels on a moveable Pivot are used in most cases when the front of the column is small, or when the change of direction to be given, is less than the quarter circle.

When Wheels or Changes of direction of bodies in column, are made on a moveable Pivot, both flanks are kept in motion;

* The stars show the flank to which the men dress after the wheels.
the inner, or flank wheeled to, describing an arc of the lesser circle; the outer, or wheeling flank, describing an arc of the larger circle; the intermediate men, by a compound of inclining and wheeling, conforming to this movement.

When the change is to be made to the Pivot hand, the Leader of the Head of the Column, when at the distance of a few yards (according to the strength of his Troop) from the point of intersection of the old and new direction, will give the word "Right (or Left) shoulders," upon which the Pivot leader, without altering his pace begins to circle so as to enter the new Direction a few yards beyond the point of intersection; the Troop, on the principle of gradual dressing, conforming to this movement in the manner before directed. When this is effected, the leader gives the word "Forward," for the Troop to pursue the straight line. The leader of each succeeding Troop, when he arrives at the point where the first began to wheel, will proceed in the same manner, always preserving his proper distance.

When the change is to be made to the Reverse hand, the Troop Leader, having arrived at about the distance of the front of his troop from the point of intersection of the old and new Direction, gives the word "Right (or Left) Shoulders," and the Pivot gradually circles into the new direction; the rest of the Troop, by giving way and decreasing the pace, having conformed to the movement, the Leader, at the proper point, gives the word "Forward." It is, however, to be observed, that the distance, at which the Troop leader ought to give the word "Right (or Left) Shoulders," from the old direction towards the new one, must depend upon the extent of front of his Troop, the degree of change to be made, and the rate of march at which the body is moving; for, in proportion as each is increased, should the arc of the circle be increased also, and the operation be sooner commenced, in order that the change may be made gradually, without overshooting the line, and so completed that the intended direction may be pursued at the word "Forward."

During the change to either hand, the whole continue looking to the proper Pivot flank, which never alters the rate of march, but the Reverse flank is, in the one case, obliged to slacken, and, in the other, to quicken its movement.

Observe. Wheeling on the Moveable Pivot is only applicable to Columns.
Section IX.

MOVEMENT BY FOURS.

The Movement by Fours enables a body of Cavalry, whether in Line, in Quarter Distance, or in open Column, to reverse its front, or wheel to a flank, upon the ground on which it stands; and thus to retire, or march to a flank, preserving the power to resume its front in the quickest possible manner.

1. The wheel is made upon the flank man of each section, the dressing to the wheeling flank. Fours wheel at once after a command without the word "March."

The words of command are "Fours Right," "Fours Left," "Fours about," and "Fours left about." "Fours" having wheeled about, must "Front" to the same hand as that by which they had gone about. If they are put "Left about," the command for fronting will be "Left about,"—"Front."

After "Fours Right," the fours are fronted by the order "Fours Left," and vice versa.

2. "Fours" as a rule always wheel to the "Right about," except when the left is thrown back, as in the following cases, when they wheel to the "Left About."

1. Change front left back.
2. By echelon of troops change position left back.
3. When left in front: forming line to the front upon the rear or upon any central troop: all troops in front of the base go left about.
4. Reversing the front of a quarter distance column, left in front.
5. The left wing in retiring by the wheel about of fours in a column of troops from both flanks.
6. The left troops in retiring by alternate troops from line.

3. In correcting squadron intervals in line, if the interval to be corrected is inconsiderable, it will be effected by the "passage;" if considerable, the words "Fours Right," will be given, and will be immediately succeeded by, "Right Incline" and vice versa.
4. Though as a rule, and always in manoeuvre, Fours are wheeled on the flank man, there are some rare occasions when it may be necessary for the "Wheel" or "Wheel about," to be made on the centre; (Nos. 1, 2, reining back, and 3, 4, wheeling up, when to the "Right," or "Right about," and vice versa when to the left). The word of command then is "On the Centres," "Fours Right," "Left," or "About," or "Front."

5. The rearmost section must move off and halt at the same instant as the head of the column. The distances between the sections must be very carefully preserved during the movement, and the interval of half a horse's length, between front and rear rank, (in column,) must also be preserved.

6. The following rules must be observed in the case of broken sections when in column.

   If the broken section should consist of one file, he will be on the pivot flank. If it consist of two files, they will be on the two flanks, and if of three the centre man will divide the ground between the two flank men.

In column of Fours, if the broken section consists of one file, the rear rank man moves up on the side of his front rank man. If it consist of two files (a half section) the rear rank move up on the side of the front rank. If it consist of three men the rear rank section follows its front rank.

In column of Sections, if the broken section consist of one file, the same as in column of sections. If it consists of three men, the flank rear rank man moves on the side of his front rank man.

7. To retire, when marching along a road in "Half Sections," the order is "Half Sections "Right or "Left about Wheel," upon which each half section of the front rank wheels about followed by its rear rank half section.

If marching in sections, each front rank section wheels about followed by its rear rank section.

8. In dismounting the even numbers of both ranks rein back one horse's length.
Directions to Instructors.

1. The drills must be practised in squads of from 12 to 18 men in single rank, they must then be gone through by the troop in two ranks, and finally by the squadron with officers complete.

After the men are able to go through the whole correctly at a walk, the movements should generally be performed at a trot, and occasionally at a gallop, but not until very steady at the slower paces.

When marching in any column of Route, the Instructor should occasionally halt the column, and make its head passage to the right or left,—say a yard—and then make the rear cover in succession by the passage.

In executing formations, the instructor takes care to place the leading men perfectly square, as they arrive on the intended line, in order that the remainder may have a correct base for their formation: great pains must be taken to prevent any hurry in dressing up, which cannot be done too steadily; it is always better to be behind than before the line.

Except for a few of the first lessons and for the sake of Explanation to the soldier, the Formations should always be performed from the move, and without any preparatory halt, otherwise the instruction becomes different from the practice in regimental movement, where the formations of the squadrons are necessarily made without any such halts.

No fault requires so much attention to correct as the hurried-up of the rear during a Formation, even although some loss of distance should happen in consequence.

The "Fours", on the flanks should be occasionally changed during the exercise, in order to accustom every man to lead steadily, and acquire readiness in commencing marches and formations.

The command "Fours" should be given as a caution, then after a pause, "Right," "Left," or "About."
Section X.

PACES.

1. Although the paces of the Cavalry cannot be regulated by the length of step as in the Infantry, they may nevertheless be correctly determined by establishing the following fixed rates for each pace:

The rate of Walk not to exceed four miles an hour.

The rate of Trot to be eight miles and a half an hour, as the general pace of manœuvre, but for Adjutant's Drills and the ordinary exercise of a Regiment, it may be limited to seven miles an hour.

The rate of Gallop to be eleven miles an hour.

2. To practise these paces, a quarter of a mile is to be accurately marked out, which the Officers and Non-commisioned Officers must be trained to pass over, at the Walk, in three minutes and forty-five seconds; at the Drill Trot, in two minutes and nine seconds; at the Trot of Manœuvre, in one minute and forty-six seconds; and at the Gallop, in one minute and twenty-two seconds.

This Exercise will ensure the steady leading of Troops whether in Column or in Line; and when any number of Regiments assemble, all will be found accustomed to move at the same paces.

3. The Gallop is to be occasionally used by Squadrons, and single Regiments, for any simple formations, but it is not to be considered applicable to the general purposes of manœuvre.

4. The rate of charge should not exceed the utmost speed of the slowest horses.

5. To preserve that uniformity of movement so essential to order and regularity, the Trot and Gallop must commence gradually, and by the whole body at the same time; and they should generally end in the same gradual way.

6. It must always be borne in mind that large bodies, consistent with perfect order, cannot move with the same rapidity as smaller ones, and therefore an allowance proportionable to their extent must be made in conducting them.
Section XI.

FORMATION OF THE TROOP.

1. Each Troop forms on its own Parade "in single rank*" according to the size-roll the tallest men and horses being on that flank which will be the inward one in Squadron. The Inspection is then made as ordered.

2. The Commanding Officer numbers the Troop off from its inward flank, and forms two deep, by reining back the even numbers and passaging. If the numbers are uneven, he leaves the last man but one on the outward flank of the front rank uncovered.

3. He places the senior Subaltern in front of the centre, and the junior in the rear.

4. He then places one Serjeant on the right, and another on the left of the Troop, who are termed the "Troop Guides," covered by two Non-commissioned Officers or steady soldiers, and when the Troop is of the strength of 24 files, two Non-commissioned Officers together, as nearly as he can judge, in the centre of the Front rank, who are to become the "Division Guides."

5. Any remaining Non-commissioned Officers, with the Trumpeter and Farrier, are posted in the rear, at the distance of a horse's length.

6. If the Troop is to join in Squadron immediately, any further telling off may be dispensed with, until the Squadron is formed.

7. If the Troop is to act independently, or has any considerable distance to march to the rendezvous of the Squadron, it will be further told off, according to the Instructions for the Squadron, in the following Section, so far as they are applicable.

* On service the Troops will in general fall in at once in two ranks, and for occasions of turning out by night it is essential that each man should recollect his number by fours, according to which he will then fall in.
Section XII.

FORMATION OF THE SQUADRON.

_Squadron in Line._

1. When the Squadron is to be formed, the two Troops that compose it close in to each other, and the Officers advance two horses’ lengths, turn about, and front their Troops.

2. The Squadron leader, having ascertained the number of files in each Troop, equalizes them, by shifting one or more files from the outward flank of the stronger Troop.
3. The distribution of the Officers is as follows: One in front of the centre of each Troop (termed the Troop Leaders): another (termed the Squadron Seresfile) in rear of the centre of the Squadron; one in rear of the centre of each Troop, termed the Troop Seresfiles.

4. In the Household Cavalry a Troop Corporal-Major, or Corporal, is appointed to carry the Standard, covered by a Corporal or Private; and they should be posted in the centre, when the Troops close in.

5. In other Regiments, the Non-commissioned Officer on the right of the left Troop will be considered the centre of the Squadron.

6. Telling off the Squadron and Posting the Non-commissioned Officers. The Squadron being thus formed of two Troops, with a Non-commissioned Officer (called a Troop Guide), on the flank of each, is ordered to number off from the centre, when, if the number of files in the squadron is 48, it will be told off in Divisions, and two Non-commissioned Officers (called Division Guides) will move out and post themselves on the flanks.

7. The Commanding Officer then orders the men to tell themselves off by Fours, beginning at the Standard, exclusive, and telling off to each flank; the File on the right of the Standard telling off "Four," and the one on the left "One." The Guides are to be included in these tellings off; two Non-commissioned Officers (called Assistant Guides) will post themselves on the inward flank of each outward Troop section of Fours.

8. The central Divisions (2nd and 3rd) must always divide by fours; and this rule being attended to, all four divisions should be made as nearly equal as the numbers will allow.

9. Whenever the Squadron is above sixty-four file strong, it may also be told off by Divisions; these are to be led by the Guides on the Pivot flank, in the manner prescribed for Divisions.

10. As soon as the Squadron is told off, the Commanding Officer proves the Tellings off by the Commands:

"First and Third Divisions—Proof!" On which the whole
of the men of the First and Third Divisions hold out their right hands, to the front.

"As you were!"
"Flanks of Fours—Proof!" They extend their right hands.
"As you were!"
"Even Numbers—Proof!" They extend their right hands.
"As you were!"
"Officers take post!"

11. Posts of Officers and Non-commissioned Officers after the Squadron is formed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Commanding Officer</th>
<th>Advance a horse's length before the Standard. (Squadron Leader.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two Officers</td>
<td>One at the same distance in front of the centre of each Troop. (Troop Leader.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One Officer</td>
<td>A horse's length in rear of the centre of the Squadron. (Squadron Serresfile.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Officers</td>
<td>One at the same distance in rear of the centre of each Troop. (Troop Serresfile.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ten Non-commissioned Officers</td>
<td>One on each flank of each Division (Guide), one on the inward flank of each outward Troop section (Assistant Guide), with a Corporal or intelligent Private, as his Coverer in the rear-rank.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Trumpeters in rear of the third file from each flank, the Farrier in rear of the fourth file.*

Supernumerary Officers and Serjeants, and the Farriers, distributed in one line, at a horse's length from the rear rank.

12. Replacing of Officers, &c. In this distribution, if a sufficient number of any rank is not present, Serjeants replace Officers, Corporals replace Serjeants, and intelligent men replace Corporals, so that no post shall remain vacant.

13. In order to preserve each Troop entire, it is not material if one Division is a file stronger than another. Officers will be posted with their Troops as much as possible. Farriers are considered as detached while the Squadron or Regiment is manoeuvring.

* Whenever these positions are interfered with by the Standard, or the Regimental Marker, they will close in towards the centre of the Squadron.
14. When the Squadron is to take order, the Commanding Officer gives the word "Take Order," and the distance of three horses' lengths is immediately marked by the two flank men of the Rear rank, who move to the rear, turn their horses about to the front, and dress to the hand ordered. At the word "March!" the Rear rank reins back, and is dressed upon the flank men.

The Troop Serrefiles move round the flanks, and align themselves with the Squadron and Troop Leaders, in front of the second file from the outward flanks of their Troops. The Squadron Serrefile divides the ground between the Squadron and Right Troop Leader.

The Trumpeters are on the right of the Front Rank, at an interval of one horse's length.
15. Close Order. When from "Order," the Squadron is to take "Close Order," the caution is given "Take Close Order!" and at the word "March!" the Rear rank closes up at a steady trot, and the Officers take their posts as before.

Section XIII.

THE REGIMENTAL STANDARD.

(Household Cavalry excepted.)

The Regimental Standard is to be detached, like the Colours in the Infantry.

It will be escorted by a Non-commissioned Officer on each Flank.

Its position will be as follows:

In Line, at order.—In the centre of the Regiment, in Line with the Officers.

In Line, close order.—In the centre of the Regiment, in Line with the Front Rank.

In Column of Squadrons.—In rear of 4th File from Pivot Flank of Second Squadron.

In \( \frac{1}{2} \) Dist: Column.—The same.

In Column of Troops.—In rear of 4th File from Pivot Flank of Rear Troop of Second Squadron.

In Double Column.—In rear of 4th File from Pivot Flank of Rear Troop of Second Squadron.

In Marching Past by Squadrons.—In Line with the officers of the Leading Squadron. Squadron Leader in front.

In Marching Past in any other order.—Same as in manœuvre.

N.B.—When the Regiment is composed of three Squadrons, the position of Standard will be as follows:

In Line, at order.—Between 1 and 2 Squadrons, in Line with Officers.

In Line, close order.—2 horses' lengths to right of 2nd Squad. Serrefile. Between 1 and 2 Squadrons, in Line with Front Rank.

In Column of Squadron.  
In \( \frac{1}{2} \) Dist: Column.  
In Column of Troops.  
Same as in Regiments with four Squads.

In Double Column.—In rear of 4th File from Pivot Flank of Pivot Troop of Leading Squadron.
In Marching Past by Squadrons.—Same as in Regiments with four Squadrons.

N.B.—In Line at order, the Standard Escort is to be in Line with the Front Rank, and Covering the Standard,—at all other times, it is to be on each Flank of the Standard.

Section XIV.

Marches to the Right.

By Fours.

"Fours Right." The whole wheel "Fours right." (fig. 1.)

"March." The whole move off together. (fig. 2.)

By Sections.

"Sections Right." The whole wheel "Fours right." (fig. 3.)

"March." The leading Four of the front rank marches straight forward, its rear rank inclining and covering it; the remainder move off their ground in succession, in the same manner; first a front-rank Four, and then a rear-rank Four, alternately. (fig. 4.)
Marches from the Right to the Front.

By Fours.

"Advance by Fours from the Right." The whole wheel Fours right. (fig. 1.)

"March." "Left wheel." The leading Fours wheeling to the left receive the word "Forward," and move straight to the front; the remainder move on, and wheel to the left, at the same point from which the right-hand Four advanced. (fig. 2.)

By Sections.

"Advance by Sections from the Right." The right-hand Fours advance four horses lengths; the remainder wheel "Fours Right." (fig. 3.)
"March." The right section marches straight to the front, followed by its rear rank; the remainder move off their ground in succession; first a front-rank, and then a rear-rank, section alternately, and wheel to the left at the same point from which the leading Section advanced. (fig. 4.)

**By Half Sections.**

"Advance by Half Sections from the Right." "March." The right front-rank half section marches straight to the front, followed by its rear-rank; the remainder turn to the right move off their ground in succession, as it comes to their turn, wheeling to the left, when they arrive at the point from which the leading Half Section advanced. (fig. 5.)

**By Files.**

"Advance by Files from the Right." "March." The right-hand man of the front rank marches straight to the front, followed by his rear-rank man; the remainder move off their ground in succession; first a front-rank, and then a rear-rank man, alternately, and wheel to the left, at the same point from which the leading man advanced. (fig. 6.)
Marches from the Right to the Rear.

By Fours.

"Retire by Fours from the Right." The whole wheel "Fours Right." (fig. 1.) "March," followed by "Right Wheel;" the leading Fours, wheeling to the right, receive the word "Forward," and march straight to the rear, the remainder following, and wheeling to the right, at the same point from which the leading Fours retired. (fig. 2.)

By Sections.

"Retire by Sections from the Right." The whole wheel, "Fours Right." (fig. 3.) "March" followed by Right Wheel; the leading front-rank Section, advancing one yard, and wheeling again to the right, marches straight to the rear, followed by its rear-rank Section; the remainder move off their ground in succession, first a front-rank, and then a rear-rank, Section, alternately, each wheeling to the right at the same point from which the leading Section retired. (fig. 4.)

By Half Sections.

"Retire by Half Sections from the Right." "March." The right front-rank half section turns to the right-about, and marches to the rear followed by its rear rank; the remainder move off their ground in succession, front and rear-rank men, as it comes to their turn, wheeling to their right, when they arrive at the same point from which the leading Half Section retired. (fig. 5.)
Part 2.] FORMATIONS TO THE FRONT.

By Files.

"Retire by Files from the Right."
"March." The right-hand man of the front rank turns about, and marches straight to the rear, followed by his rear-rank man; the remainder move off their ground in succession; first a front-rank, and then a rear-rank, man, alternately, each turning to his right, as he arrives at the same point from which the leading man retired. (fig. 6.)

Section XV.

FORMATIONS TO THE FRONT, FLANKS, AND REAR, FROM FOUR S, SECTIONS, HALF SECTIONS, AND FILES.

Formations to the Front.*

FROM FOURS.

"Front Form." The leading Four of the front rank continues to advance for four horses' lengths, and then halts, its rear-rank Four, checking its pace, and moving by an incline to its proper distance, and covering it; the rest of the rear-rank Fours check their pace till the front-rank Four of the rank next behind come up abreast of them, the whole moving up into line with the leading Four by inclining to the left. (fig. 1.)

* It must be recollected that all the Formations from Fours, Sections, Half Sections, and Files are to be performed on the move without any preparatory halt. It is only for the first explanations, that the leading Four or File may be moved up separately, and placed on its ground. The Rear Rank Fours then wait before they move.
FORMATIONS TO THE FRONT. [Part 2.

FROM SECTIONS.

"Front Form." The leading Section of the front rank continues to advance for four horses' lengths, and then halts, its rear-rank Section moving up to its proper distance and covering it, and the remainder moving up into line, by inclining to the left (fig. 2).

FROM HALF SECTIONS.

"Front Form." The leading half section of the front rank continues to advance for four horses' lengths, and then halts, its rear rank moving to its proper distance, and covering; the remainder moving up into line by inclining to the left (fig. 3).

FROM FILE.

"Front Form." The leading man of the front rank continues to advance for four horses' lengths, and then halts, his rear-rank man moving up to his proper distance, and covering him; the remainder moving up into line, by inclining to the left (fig. 4).

Observations. 1. In Formations to the front, immediately on issuing from narrow ways or streets, it is impossible for the rear, who are not yet clear of the defile, to incline at once towards their places in line; on these occasions, therefore, the Formation of all but the head of the column becomes the same as laid down for "Formations to the Reverse Flank," since all, excepting the leading men, turn to the left as they
come out of the defile, and march along the rear of those already formed, till they come opposite the places where they are to move up into line.

2. The column of fours must be drilled also to form rear rank leading. The command is "Rear rank leading, form Troop or Squadron," when the incline will be to the right instead of the left, and the formation will be made in the same manner as for a formation front rank leading, the words "Front" and "Rear" being transposed.

Formations to the Left.

FROM FOURS.

fig. 1. "Fours Left." N.B. In this case, the word "Fours Left" is employed instead of "Left Form."

The whole of the Fours wheel to the left, and halt (fig. 1.).

FROM SECTIONS.

"Left Form." The leading Section wheels to the left, and moves up four horses' lengths, followed by its rear-rank Section; the remainder continue moving on, and as each Section arrives opposite its place, it wheels to the left, and forms up to the rank to which it belongs (fig. 2).

FROM HALF SECTIONS.

"Left Form." The leading Half Section wheels to the left, and moves up four horses' lengths, followed by its Rear-rank; the remainder continue moving on, and as each Half Section arrives opposite its place, it wheels to the left, and forms up to the rank to which it belongs (fig. 3).
FORMATIONS TO THE REVERSE FLANK.

FROM FILES.

"Left Form." The leading man turns to the left, and moves up four horses' lengths, followed by his rear-rank man; the remainder continue moving on, and as each man arrives opposite his place, he turns to the left, and forms up to the rank to which he belongs (fig. 4).

Formations to the Reverse Flank.

FROM FOURS.

"To the Reverse Flank." "Right Form." The rear-rank Fours check their pace till the front-rank Fours of the rank next behind come up abreast of them; in the mean time, the leading Four of the front rank wheels to the right and advances four horses' lengths beyond the right flank of the Column, and halts; its rear-rank wheeling to the right, covering it, and moving up to the proper distance; the remainder continue moving on, each Four wheeling to the right when opposite its place, and forming up to the rank to which it belongs (fig. 1).

FROM SECTIONS.

"To the Reverse Flank." "Right Form." The leading Section of the front rank wheels to the right, advances four horses' lengths, and halts; its rear-rank Section arriving behind it, wheels, covers, and moves up to its proper distance; the remainder continue moving on and as each Section arrives opposite its place, it wheels to the right, and forms up to the rank to which it belongs (fig. 2).

FROM HALF SECTIONS.

"To the Reverse Flank." "Right Form." The leading Half Section of the front rank turns to the right, advances four horses' lengths and halts; its rear-rank wheeling to the right and covering, and moving up to its proper distance; the remainder continue moving on, each Half Section turning to the right when opposite its place, and forming up to the rank to which it belongs (fig. 3).
FROM SINGLE FILES.

"To the Reverse Flank," "Right Form." The leading man of the front rank turns to the right, advances four horses' lengths, and halts; the rear-rank man arriving behind him, turns, covers, and moves up to his proper distance; the remainder continue moving on, and as each man arrives opposite his place, he turns to the right, and forms up to the rank to which he belongs (fig. 4).

Formations to the Right about.

FROM FOURS.

"Right about Form." The rear-rank Fours check their pace till the front-rank Fours next behind come up abreast of them; in the mean time, the leading Four of the front rank wheels to its right, advances enough to clear the flank of the Column by half a horse's length, wheels again to its right, advances four horses' lengths, and halts; its rear rank makes two wheels to the right, follows and covers at the proper distance; the remainder continue moving on, wheeling to the right at the same point, passing along the rear of those already formed, and forming up to the ranks to which they belong, as they come opposite their places (fig. 1).

FROM SECTIONS.

Right about Form." The leading Section of the front rank wheels to the right, advances enough to clear the flank of the Column by half a horse's length, wheels again to its right, advances four horses' lengths, and halts; its rear rank makes two wheels to the right, in like manner, when it has reached the same point, following and covering at the proper distance; the remainder continue moving on, wheeling to the right at the same point, passing along the rear of those already formed, and forming up to the ranks to which they belong when they come opposite their places (fig. 2).
FROM HALF SECTIONS.

"Right about Form." The leading front rank Half Section wheels to the right, advances enough to clear the flank of the Column by half a horse's length, wheels again to the right, advances four horses' lengths, and halts; its rear rank makes two wheels to the right, follows and covers; the remainder continue moving on, wheeling to the right at the same point, passing along the rear of those already formed, and forming up to the ranks to which they belong, as they come opposite their places (fig. 3).

FROM FILES.

"Right about Form." The leading man turns to the right, advances half a horse's length, turns again to the right, advances four horses' lengths, and halts; his rear-rank man makes two wheels in like manner, as he arrives at the same point, following and covering at the proper distance; the remainder continue moving on, wheeling to the right at the same point, passing along the rear of those already formed, and forming up to the ranks to which they belong, as they come opposite their places (fig. 4).

Section XVI.
COUNTERMARCH, AND REVERSING THE FRONT, OF THE SQUADRON.

COUNTERMARCH.

The effect of a countermarch is, that the Front Rank and Rear Rank change places, and the Line fronts the contrary way to what it did before.
COUNTERMARCH, AND REVERSING THE FRONT. 125

The Squadron in Line (fig. 1.) receives the caution,

"The Squadron will Countermarch," followed by "Fours Right and Left," on which the Front rank wheel "Fours right;" and the Rear rank wheel "Fours left" (fig. 2.)

On the word "March," the leading Four of each rank advances half a horse's length, and wheels to the right-about on its right-hand man, and the whole follow, and wheel at the same point, until the Front rank and Rear rank have (within half a horse's length) changed places (fig. 3.); immediately upon which the word "Halt, Front, Dress," is given (fig. 4.)

Observation. Whenever a Squadron, Troop, or Division countermarches, the Front rank invariably wheel "Fours right," and the Rear rank "Fours left," without reference to which flank may be the Pivot.

REVERSING THE FRONT.

The Squadron should be frequently practised to "Reverse its Front," in the following manner:

"Reverse the Front by the wheel about of Troops—Right Troop Advance—March." The Right Troop advances a distance equal to its front, and as soon as the Leader of the Left Troop judges he shall have room, he gives the word "Right about wheel—March," followed by "Halt, Dress," at the completion of the wheel. His word to "wheel" is the signal for the Leader of the Right Troop to give that Troop the word "Left about wheel," followed by "Forward" at the completion of the wheel, and "Halt, Dress up," when on a line with the rear rank of the Left Troop. It must, in this exercise, be an invariable rule for the Right Troop to be that which advances.
Section XVII.

DIMINUTION AND INCREASE OF FRONT.

Diminishing the Front from the Halt.

1. From Squadron to Troops. When the Squadron is to diminish its front to Troops, the caution is given, "Advance in Column of Troops from the Right," on which the Leader of the Right Troop, taking his post in front of the second File from the left, gives the word "Right Troop Advance." On the word "March," that Troop advances, and just before his right flank is cleared by it, the Leader of the Left Troop, taking post in like manner, gives the word "Left Troop—Right incline—March," followed by "Forward," as soon as it covers in Column.

2. From Troops to Divisions. When a Squadron of 48 files, standing in Column of Troops, is to diminish its front to Divisions, the caution is given "Advance by Divisions from the Right," on which the Leader of the Right Troop gives the word "First Division Advance." On the word "March," that Division advances, and just before the flank of the second is cleared by it, he adds, "Second Division—Right incline—March;" the left Guide of that Division giving the word "Forward," as soon as it covers the first Division. The Troop Leader then takes his proper place in Column (see p. 149, Art. 9). At the same time the Left Troop forms Divisions in the same way. So that the First and Third Divisions advance and the Second and Fourth incline, at the same moment.

3. If the Squadron is at once to march off to its front, in Column of Divisions, the caution is given, "Advance by Divisions from the Right."

The Right Troop Leader gives the word, "First Division, Advance; Second Division, Right Wheel."

The Left Troop Leader gives the word, "Third and Fourth Divisions, Right Wheel."
On the word, "March," the first Division moves straight forward; the Second Division wheels and receives the word, "Left Wheel," and "Forward," from its Guide; the Third and Fourth Divisions receive the word, "Forward," from the Troop Leader, and, when arrived at the angle, "Left Wheel," and "Forward," from the Troop Leader, and Division Guide.

4. From Divisions to Fours. When the Squadron, standing in Column of Divisions, is to diminish its front to Fours, the caution is given, "Advance by Fours from the Right;" the whole wheel fours right, followed by left wheel; and on the word "March," each Division advances in Column of Fours from its right, as laid down for the "March from Right to Front," (p. 116, Sect. XIV.). By this means all the Divisions fall into one Column of Fours.

5. From Fours to Sections. When the Squadron, standing in Column of Fours, is to diminish its front to Sections, the caution is given "Advance by Sections," repeated by the Leader of the Right Troop; and on the word "March," the leading Section of the Front rank advances straight; its Rear-rank Section inclines to the left until it covers, and follows; the remainder move off in succession in the same manner, first a Front-rank Section, and then a Rear-rank Section, alternately. The other Troop moves off in due time, by the same word from its Leader, and in the same way.

6. From Sections to Half Sections. When the Squadron, standing in Column of Sections, is to diminish its front to Half Sections, the caution is given, "Advance by Half Sections," repeated by the Leader of the Right Troop. On the word "March," the right Half Section advances straight, followed by its Rear-rank, then the left Half Section, Front and Rear-rank inclining to the right, covers and follows. The remainder move off in the same way, as it comes to their turn; the other Troop moves off in due time, by the same word from its Leader, and in the same way.

7. From Half Sections to Files. When the Squadron, standing in Half Sections, is to diminish its front to Files, the caution is given, "Advance by Files," repeated by the Leader of the Right Troop. On the word "March," the leading right-hand man of the Front rank advances straight followed by his Rear-rank man; then the Left-hand man followed by his Rear-rank man, inclines and follows; the remainder move off their ground as it comes to their turn. The other Troop
follows in due time, by the same word from its leader, and in the same way.

8. FROM FOURS TO HALF SECTIONS. The Squadron breaks at once from "Fours" to Half Sections, by the word, "Advance by Half Sections," repeated by the Leader of the Right Troop. On the word "March," the Right Front-rank Half Section of the leading Four advances, followed by its Rear-rank, then the Left Half Section followed by its Rear-rank. The other Troop follows in due time, by the same word from its Leader, and in the same way (fig. 1).

9. FROM FOURS TO FILE. To diminish at once from Fours to File, the caution is given, "Advance by Files," repeated by the Leader of the Right Troop. On the word "March," the Right-hand man of the leading front-rank Section moves off, followed by his Rear-rank man, who inclines to the left, covers, and follows him; the remainder move off in the same manner, Front, and Rear-rank, men, alternately, as it come to their turn. The other Troop follows in due time, by the same word from its Leader, and in the same way (fig. 2).

Diminishing the Front on the Move.

1. FROM SQUADRON TO TROOPS. When the Squadron, on the march, is to diminish its Front to Troops, the caution is given, "Form Troops," on which the leader of the Left Troop gives the words "Left Troop Halt—Right Incline—March," and then taking post in front of the second File from the left, "Forward," as soon as it covers in Column.

2. FROM TROOPS TO DIVISIONS. When the Squadron, marching in Column of Troops, is to diminish its front to Divisions, the caution is given, "Form Divisions," on which the Leader of the Right Troop gives the words, "Second Division, Halt—Right Incline—March;" and then takes his proper place in Column (see p. 149, Art. 9): the left Guide of the second Division gives the word "Forward," when it has gained its covering. The Leader of the Left Troop doubles back the fourth Division at the same moment, and in the same way.

3. FROM DIVISIONS TO FOURS. The Squadron marching in Column of Divisions, and arriving at a place where the front
must be diminished to Fours, the caution is given, "Advance by Fours from the Right;" the whole wheel Fours right, followed by left wheel; and each Division moves off from its right, on the principle prescribed in Sect. XIV., for the "March from Right to Front."

Observation. In diminishing the front from any description of Column of Route to a lesser one, on the move, the command is "Form Sections," "Half Sections," or "Files," "Rear Halt;" the leading body continuing to advance, and the remainder after halting moving off in succession, as laid down.

Increasing the Front from the Halt.

1. From File to Half Sections. The Squadron standing in File, the caution is given, "Form Half Sections," repeated by Troop Leaders. On the word "March," the leading Files, Front and Rear Rank, advance four horses' lengths. No. 2 forms upon the left; No. 3 forms up in rear of No. 1, and No. 4 of No. 2. The remainder form up in succession, odd numbers on the right, even numbers on the left.

2. From Half Sections to Sections. The Squadron standing in Half Sections, the caution is given, "Form Sections," repeated by Troop Leaders. On the word "March," the leading Half Section advances four horses' lengths, and the left Half Section moves up on its Left, the remainder following, and each Section forming, when it arrives at those which formed last.

3. From Sections to Fours. The Squadron standing in Sections, the caution is given, "Form Fours," repeated by Troop Leaders. On the word "March," the leading Front-rank Section advances four horses' lengths, the leading Rear-rank Section inclines to the right, and dresses up to it; the remainder move off at a walk, each Four forming when it arrives at those which formed last.

4. From Fours to Divisions. The Squadron standing in Fours, the caution is given, "Form Divisions," repeated by Troop Leaders. On the word "March," the leading Front-rank section of each Division advances four horses' lengths and halts; the remainder of each Division inclining and forming on their own leading sections in the manner laid down for
the Formation to the Front from Fours, in Sect. XV.,* p. 119.

5. FROM DIVISIONS TO TROOPS. The Squadron standing in Column of Divisions, the caution is given, "Form Troops." The Leader of the Right Troop gives the word "First Division Advance—Second Division Left incline;" and the Leader of the Left Troop, "Third Division Advance—Fourth Division Left incline." On the word "March," the first and third Divisions advance four horses’ lengths, and receive from their Troop Leaders the word, "Halt, Dress." The second and fourth Divisions incline to the left, and receive from their right Guides the word "Forward," when the right flank is uncovered, and "Halt, Dress up," when their Front rank is in line with the Rear rank of the Divisions formed on. The Troop Leaders place themselves where their left flanks will arrive, in order to see that these Divisions dress to the Pivot as soon as formed, and then take their proper place in Front of the Second Files.

6. FROM TROOPS TO SQUADRON. The Squadron standing in Column of Troops, the caution is given, "Form Squadron," on which the Leader of the right Troop gives the word "Right Troop Advance," and the Leader of the Left Troop "Left Troop, Left incline." On the word "March," the Right Troop advancing four horses’ lengths, its Leader gives the word "Halt, Dress," and takes post in front of its centre; the Left Troop at the same time inclines to the left, until its right flank is uncovered, when its Leader gives the word "Forward," followed by "Halt, Dress up," when its front-rank is in line with the rear-rank of the other Troop, and then takes post in front of the centre of his Troop.

Increasing the Front on the Move.

1. FROM FILE TO HALF SECTIONS. The Squadron arriving in File at the spot where the front is to be increased to Half Sections, receives the word "Form Half Sections," repeated by the Troop Leaders, who add the word "Rear Trot." The

* As the last rear-rank section of each Division, except the rear one, is prevented inclining by the leading section of the next Division, it must advance straight till it gets room.
leading files front and rear-rank continue to walk steadily forward; No. 2 trots up on the left, No. 3 trots up in rear of No. 1, and No. 4 of No. 2, and take up the walk. The remainder move on at a trot, each Half Section forming as it arrives at those which last formed, and then dropping into the walk.

2. FROM HALF SECTIONS TO SECTIONS. The Squadron arriving in Half Sections at the spot where the front is to be increased to Sections, receives the word "Form Sections," repeated by Troop Leaders, who add the word "Rear Trot." The leading Half Section walks steadily forward, and the Left Half Section trots up upon its left. The remainder move on at a trot, each Section forming as it arrives at those which formed last, and then dropping into the walk.

3. FROM SECTIONS TO FOURS. The Squadron arriving in Sections at the spot where the front is to be increased to Fours, receives the word "Form Fours," repeated by Troop Leaders, who also add the word "Rear Trot." The leading Section continues to walk steadily forward; its rear-rank Section inclines to the right, and trots up abreast of it. The remainder move on at a trot, each Four forming when they arrive at those which formed last, and then dropping into the walk.

4. FROM HALF SECTIONS TO FOURS. The Squadron forms at once from Half Sections to Fours by the word "Form Fours," repeated by Troop Leaders, who add the word "Rear Trot," on which the leading Half Section of the front rank forms as before directed; the rear rank Half Section inclines to the right, so as to give room for the Half Section on its left between it and the front rank. The remainder move up, and form in the same manner (fig. 1).

5. FROM FOURS TO DIVISIONS. The Squadron arriving in Fours at the spot where the front is to be increased to Divisions, receives the word "Form Divisions," repeated by Troop Leaders, who also add the word "Rear Trot." Each Division forms to the front, as laid down (p. 129) for the "Formation from Fours," and then drops into the walk.*

6. FROM DIVISIONS TO TROOPS. The Squadron arriving in Column of Divisions at the spot where the front is to be in-

* As the last rear-rank section of each Division is prevented inclining by the leading section of the next Division, it must advance straight till it gets room.
creased to Troops, receives the word "Form Troops," on which the Right Troop Leader gives the word "Second Division, Left incline, Trot," and the Left Troop Leader gives his word in like manner to the Fourth Division. As these Divisions come up with the First and Third, which continue to walk steadily forward, their right Guides give the words "Forward," and "Walk," when in line with the Divisions formed on. Troop Leaders place themselves where their left flanks will arrive, to see that the men dress to the Pivot, and then take their proper places in front of the second Files.

7. From Troops to Squadron. The Squadron arriving in Column of Troops at the spot where it is intended to form Squadron, receives the caution, "Form Squadron," on which the Left Troop Leader gives the word "Left Troop, Left incline, Trot." As soon as his right flank is uncovered, he gives the word "Forward," followed by "Walk," on arriving in line with the Right Troop, which meantime continues walking steadily forward. The moment the Squadron is thus formed, Troop Leaders take post in front of the centre of their Troops.

8. From Divisions to Squadron. The Squadron moving in Column of Divisions may form at once to the front by word from the Squadron Leader, "Form Squadron," on which the Right Troop Leader gives the word "Second Division, Left incline, Trot;" and the Left Troop Leader, "Third and Fourth Divisions, Left incline, Trot;" on which they proceed as directed in the preceding paragraph. When the Squadron is formed, its Leader gives the word "Eyes centre;" (or "Eyes Left," if the Squadron is supposed part of a Regimental Column, right in front.)

Observations. When the "Increasing" of Front is performed by the Squadron marching at a trot, the Troop Leaders give the word "Rear Gallop" instead of "Trot," and "Trot" instead of "Walk," but this rate must not be attempted till complete steadiness has been attained. Great care must be taken, in all these exercises, that the rear do not move up in the least degree faster than the regular pace ordered.
Section XVIII.

ADVANCE OF THE SQUADRON.

1. March in Line. The Squadron being halted and dressed, the "Leader" must take care that he is exactly placed before the Standard, or, (where there is no Standard,) before the Right Guide of the left Troop, and square with respect to the front of the Squadron.

2. Line of March taken. In the Advance he will direct his march upon two objects, and as it is not always easy to find them in the distance, such as trees, houses, &c., all Officers should acquire the habit of readily selecting marks upon the ground, at no great distance, such as small stones or tufts of grass, and so taking fresh ones in the same line, as they advance upon those first selected (see Sect. V., p. 98).

The Leader gives the caution "The Squadron will advance," and at the word "March," each man puts his horse in motion, and dresses towards the Centre by a glance of the eyes, but without at all turning his head.

3. Attention of Squadron Leaders. It is the great business of a Leader of a Squadron to carry it forward in its exact perpendicular direction, and he must avoid looking back too often to give orders.

4. Attention of Troop Officers and Serrefiles. The Troop Leaders will take care to align themselves exactly with the Squadron Leader, and preserve the regulated distance from him; and it is the duty of the Serrefiles to watch over the movements of the rear rank, as well as the opening out or closing in of the front.

5. Attention of the Right Guide of the Left Troop or Standard-bearer, in the Household Cavalry. It must be his object to keep a horse's length from the Squadron Leader; to follow him exactly; and to slacken or quicken his pace, according to the words of command, or directions he receives; but any alteration of his pace must be very gradual, because any sudden hurry or check would occasion a shake throughout the Squadron.

6. Attention of the Ranks. The attention of the rest of the Squadron should be invariably fixed towards the Centre;
but each man and horse must be perfectly square to the front, the dressing being preserved by a glance of the eye, and never by turning the head. The flanks of the Squadron are to be kept rather back, and never on any account before the centre.

The interval of Files is taken and preserved from the Centre of the Squadron. This is more immediately the business of the Front rank. The Rear rank, at the same time that they dress to their Centre, cover their File Leaders.

7. Alteration of Direction. If an alteration is to be made in the direction of the Squadron, the Leader gradually circles into such new direction, to which the Squadron conforms by advancing one flank and retaining the other till the change is effected. But the defects of an Advance in line must be very gradually corrected.

When the ground is sufficiently extensive, the Squadron should make long advances, changing the pace often, but attentively preserving the due rate of each pace. The Squadron, during its Advance, should be as often accustomed to diminish its pace as to increase it.

8. Filing over Broken Ground. While the Squadron is advancing in line, it should sometimes be practised in breaking off from the right of Fours for the purpose of passing over rough or broken ground. The word will be given, "From Right of Fours to the front File," on which No. 1 of each front-rank "Four" moves on, followed by Nos. 2, 3, and 4, who incline to their right, and fall into file as they get room. Each rear-rank Four follows in the same way. Nos. 1 must carefully preserve the dressing, as well as the intervals which are made by the Nos. 2, 3, and 4 dropping back. The Squadron again forms Line by the word "Front Form."

9. Halt of the Squadron. At the word "Halt, Dress," both Officers and men dress to the Centre, till they receive the word, "Eyes Front." When one movement is immediately to succeed another, a critical dressing should not be required.
PREPARATION FOR REGIMENTAL MOVEMENT. 135

Section XIX.

PREPARATION OF THE SQUADRON FOR REGIMENTAL MOVEMENT.*

1. ALTHOUGH the exercise of a single Squadron does not give opportunities for attaining a perfect knowledge of all the Movements of a Regiment in the field, it will, nevertheless, afford the means of thoroughly instructing both Officers and Men in Passaging, Reining Back, Wheeling, Counter-marching, Advancing, Inclining, Increasing and Decreasing the Front, and also in most of the Movements laid down for the practice of the Regiment.

2. In the progress of instruction, much may be taught by the use of a Skeleton Squadron, acting on the flank of a complete one. The Skeleton Squadron will be composed of Guides with their Coverers, representing the flanks of Divisions, who must take the utmost care to preserve the same extent of front which their Divisions may be supposed to occupy. When there is a want of Officers, their places must on no account be left vacant, but must be filled by Non-commissioned Officers, and an opportunity will thus be afforded for practising and instructing any number of Non-commissioned Officers. When the Squadron is weak, this exercise may be practised in Single Rank.

The Formations should be made alternately upon either Squadron, the regular words of command being given in the same manner as for a Regiment of two Squadrons.

3. Both Squadron and Troop Leaders must be taught to glance their eyes occasionally to both flanks of the bodies they command, that they may notice any inattention in the ranks. Serrefiles must allow no carelessness of the Rear rank to pass unobserved.

4. Upon the Caution being given for a Movement, the Base should be instantly placed.

5. The Squadron should be often practised in attacking to the Front according to the principles laid down in Sect. IX.,

* The contents of this Section should be frequently practised at quarters, as well as at Adjutant's drills.
PART III., p. 162, and retiring immediately from one or both
Flanks by Fours; or by "Troops outwards about Wheel."

6. Some degree of confusion is almost inevitable after a
Charge, and to show the means by which order is restored, the
Squadron should occasionally be directed to disperse after a
Charge, and again rally to the Front, Rear, or Flank, at a
Trumpet Signal, but this is an exercise to be used with
discretion, for fear of leading to unsteadiness.

7. The practice of Dismounting to act on foot, of Skirmish-
ing, and Outpost duty, must also be attended to.

Section XX.

INSTRUCTION OF YOUNG OFFICERS.

1. Great pains must be taken in the instruction of Officers
in every detail of their duty in the field. The Troop Leaders
must especially be trained to the utmost correctness of move-
ment in their own persons. It is not always sufficient for the
Instructor to tell a young Officer what he is to do; but he
should place one of his Assistants in command of the Troop
for the moment, and cause him to show the right method of
executing it.

2. At each exercise a Subaltern should be occasionally called
from the ranks, and required to give the general word of com-
mand under the instructor's direction. A Subaltern should
also be sometimes called upon to attend to the placing of the
Base, and to superintend the Markers generally.

3. For the purpose of instructing Officers to move small
bodies with facility into a new Position, a Base is to be placed
at a certain distance from the Squadron, to represent the new
Alignment, in front, on either flank, or in the rear. The Officer
is then to be directed to lead the Squadron into this Alignment,
by entering it either at a front or rear point, and then forming
line. For variety of practice, the new position should be
marked at various angles with the old one. The Squadron
may move in Column, either of Troops, Divisions, or Fours,
for this practice.

Every Officer should be taught to take up points of Forma-
tion, as laid down in Sect. VI., Part III., p. 149.
Section XXI.

LINKING HORSES.

It may sometimes be necessary to link horses, in order to enable the men to parade on foot, or for other purposes.

1. "To Link Horses." "Prepare to Dismount." The even numbers of both ranks rein back one horse’s length, and the whole dismount in the usual manner, and the even numbers move their horses up into line. Each man then takes a pace to the front and faces about, unfastens his collar chain, passes it down between the reins, and then (from the flanks to the centre) passes it under the reins, and fastens it to the collar ring of the horse next to him.

2. If the men should be called away upon any duty, a sufficient guard will be invariably left in charge of the horses.

3. The men fall in to mount at the word "Stand to your Horses," followed by "Attention." They are to front their horses’ heads, holding each bridoon rein near the ring, and at the word, "Prepare to Mount," each man unlinks his horse, and puts the chain or rein over the horse’s neck to the off side, and fastens it, the even numbers rein back their horses to the stated distance, and the whole step in to their horses, and proceed with the usual motions.

4. Should the files, on any occasion of dismounting, be doubled up without the horses being linked, the above instructions with regard to mounting will apply, excepting that the men fall in, fronting the same way with their horses, and that at the word "Prepare to Mount" the even numbers step forward, face their horses, and proceed to rein them back, the odd numbers facing to the right when they are clear.

Section XXII.

DISMOUNTED SERVICE.

1. "With Carbines, Prepare to Dismount." The even numbers of both ranks rein back a horse’s length and swivel their carbines, and (having undone the straps) shift to the near side.
2. "Dismount." The even numbers dismount, and leading up their horses, give them to the odd numbers, and then hook, or strap up, their swords. During the time they remain dismounted, their carbines are not to be unswivelled.

3. "Front Form, Quick March." The Front rank men move on in quick time, with arms at the trail, and close in to the centre of the Squadron; the Rear rank, facing outwards from the centre, file, in double quick time, with trailed arms round the flanks of the front-rank horses, and form at one yard distance behind the front-rank men. The Squadron will then be ordered to "Halt."

4. In Regiments having Standards, the Non-commissioned Officer who carries the Standard remains mounted, as also his Coverer.

5. The Squadron and Troop Leaders command the dismounted men, in the same way as when mounted. When the firing commences, they will take post according to regulation. The Squadron and Troop Serresfiles remain in charge of the led horses. The Squadron Marker comes to the front, and holds the horse of the Squadron Leader. The Troop Serresfiles take the horses of the Troop Leaders.

6. It must be a rule, when a Squadron dismounts to act on foot, to protect the horses either by a Mounted Squadron, or Troop.

7. On the word "Quick March," the Squadron advances for a short distance, and the Squadron Leader gives the word, "Right or Left Troop, Extend to Skirmish;" on which, the centre Files of that Troop continuing to move straight forward, the remainder incline outwards, and move on in double time, each File turning to the front again, and resuming the quick march as soon as it has got its interval, which should be about twelve paces. Each rear rank man of the Skirmishers should move up on the left of his own front rank man, at an interval of about four paces; the whole will then move forward in one line, thus—

The continuance of the interval between the Files must entirely depend on the nature of the ground, and must be less in thickets and brushwood. The Supporting Troop is halted by its Leader till the Skirmishers have gone forward one
hundred paces, and then receiving from him the word "Quick March," follows, in conformity to the movements of the Skirmishers.

8. When the Skirmishers receive from their Troop Leader the word "Commence Firing," the front-rank man of each File kneels and fires independently with a deliberate aim, and then loads his carbine as quickly as possible. The rear-rank men continue to move forward and fire in the same way, observing, however, as a rule, that no man must fire till his comrade is loaded, and has given him the word "Ready" in a low voice.

9. When the whole are to retire, the Squadron Leader gives the word "About," repeated by Troop Leaders. If there has been any command to "Cease Firing," the Skirmishers face about, and retire in the same order as they happen to be standing; but if there has been no such command, they retire by alternate ranks; the front rank leads to the rear and fronts at the distance of thirty or forty paces; the other rank after firing does the same, thus the two lines retire through each other (left hand to left hand), alternately forming and supporting. The line nearest the enemy must never fire until the other has loaded and fronted.

10. When the supporting Troop has retired to within thirty yards of the horses, it halts, fronts, and waits the arrival of the Skirmishers, who close in as they retire, and form upon the support. The whole are faced to the right-about, retire in quick time, and receive the word "File to your Horses;" the Rear rank then turning outwards, move in double quick time, and the whole run at once to the front of their horses, and take the reins from the odd numbers and rein back a horse's length, unhook their swords, and stand ready to mount.

11. "Mount." The even numbers mount their horses, dress up, and strap and unswivel their carbines. It may sometimes be expedient for the Support and Skirmishers to mount without any previous halt or formation, which must be effected as expeditiously as possible, without confusion.

12. Dismounted Skirmishers and Supports act upon the word "Right (or Left) incline," when required to gain ground to either flank. When they are to halt, the whole kneel or lie down, according to circumstances.

13. Every man should be instructed to take advantage of the shelter of bushes, trees, ditches, &c. without too much regard to the regularity of dressing or interval, the Front and Rear rank being accustomed to act in concert, and protect each other, by alternate loading and firing.

a 2
14. To attack a bridge or narrow pass, the men of the skirmishing Troop close inwards as they approach it, and run on quickly upon the point of attack, while the supporting Troop extends and opens a fire along the banks of the stream or flanks of the defile to cover their advance; or else follows closely in a compact body, should the ground not admit of its fire being useful. The moment the Skirmishers have cleared the defile, they extend as before.

15. To retire through a Pass, or over a Bridge, the supporting Troop retreats first, and then extends, to cover by its fire the retreat of the Skirmishers, who take care not to close, until very near the Bridge or Pass. As soon as all have gone past, the Skirmishers extend as before, and the Support closes, and acts in reserve.

16. There may be occasions when it would be desirable for skirmishers to extend mounted for dismounted service, when the support also would advance mounted, the whole dismounting in the usual way when they have occupied the required position.

Observations. In order that horses may be led on the near side with facility, commanding officers should order them to be led on that side as frequently as on the off side, when at exercise.
PART THE THIRD.

FIELD MOVEMENTS, &c.

Section I.

FORMATION OF THE REGIMENT.

The figs. A, B, C, D, show the formation of a Regiment in Line, in Close and Quarter-distance Column, and in Open Column of Troops. Figs. E. F. show the formation of Columns of Divisions and Fours.
Fig. B.

The Regiment in "Close Column" of Squadrons, Right in Front.

[Diagram of a regiment formation with annotations indicating positions of officers and standard.]
Fig. C.

The Regiment in Quarter-distance Column of Squadrons, Right in Front.

First Squadron.

Second Squadron.

Third Squadron.

Fourth Squadron.

adron
dor.

Troop
Leader.

Squadron
Serjeant.

Troop
Serjeant.

Trumpeter.

Farrier.
Part 3. FORMATION OF THE REGIMENT.

**FIRST SQUADRON:**

- Troop Leader
- Trumpeter
- Troop Serrefile
- Squadron Serrefile

**SECOND SQUADRON:**

- Troop Leader
- Trumpeter
- Troop Serrefile
- Squadrion Serrefile

**THIRD SQUADRON:**

- Troop Leader
- Trumpeter
- Troop Serrefile
- Squadrion Serrefile

**FOURTH SQUADRON:**

- Troop Leader
- Trumpeter
- Troop Serrefile

---

The Regiment in Column of Troops, Right in Front.

Fig. D.

The Regiment in Column of Troops, Right in Front.

---

SCALE: 1 1/2 INCHES TO 20 YARDS.
Fig. E.

Squadron of Forty-eight Files in Column of Divisions Right in Front.

Troop Leader

Trumpeter

Squadron Leader

Troop Serjeant

Squadron Serjeant

Troop Leader

Troop Serjeant

Trumpeter

Standard

Note.—If the Squadron is the leading one of a Column, the Right Troop Leader rides in front of the Pivot File.
Fig. F.

Squadron of Thirty-two Files in Column of Fours, Right in Front.
Section II.

POSTS AND DUTIES OF OFFICERS.

1. In Line, the Squadron Leader is in front of the centre of his Squadron; the Squadron Serrefile in rear of it; Troop Leaders in front of the centres of their Troops; Troop Serrefiles in rear of them. (See fig. A.)

When retiring in Line the Serrefile Officers lead, but do not give the words of command.

2. In Open Column of Squadrons, the Squadron Leaders are in line with the Troop Leaders, and at two horses’ lengths from the flank of the Column. The Left Troop Leader of the First Squadron leads in front of the Pivot File.

3. In Quarter-distance Column of Squadrons, the Squadron Leaders are a horse’s length from the pivot flank, and in line with the Troop Leaders. The Troop Leaders are in front of the centres of their Troops; the Serrefiles in rear of them, on the same alignment as the Troop Leaders of the next Squadron, at half a horse’s length from each, towards the centre of the Column. The Adjutant is to be on the reverse flank of the Leading Squadron. (See fig. c.)

4. When a Quarter-distance Column takes ground to a flank, the Heads of the Squadrons are conducted by the Troop Leaders, who place themselves in front of the Pivot Files.

5. When a Squadron wheels Fours Right or Left, to deploy, the Troop Leaders move up to the pivot flanks of their leading Fours, resuming their usual posts when the Squadron is fronted to march up into Line.

6. The Squadron Leader, when Fours are wheeled to deploy, halts himself when opposite where the inward flank will stand in Line, until he judges the leading Fours have got their distance; he then gives the word “Fours Left, Forward,” hastening to the centre to lead his Squadron up into Line.

7. If, for any particular occasion a “Close column” is to be formed of Troops of Squadrons (fig. v.), the Troop Leaders in the case of Troops are on the pivot flanks, in Line with the front rank; each Squadron Leader at a horse’s length interval from the Officer of his leading Troop; the Serrefiles on the reverse flank. In the case of Squadrons, the Troop Leaders on the pivot flanks are in line with the front ranks, with the Troop Serrefiles covering them, and in line with the rear ranks, each Squadron Leader being at a horse’s length
from the pivot flank and in line with the Troop Leaders; the Troop Leaders of the reverse Troops, as well as all other Serrefiles, to be on the reverse flank.

8. In the Open Column and Oblique Echelon of Troops, the Squadron Leader superintends the movements of both his Troops; Troop Leaders are in front of the second Files from the pivot or directing flanks, to which points they move, on the completion of the wheel from Line into Column (see fig. d) or Echelon.

9. In similar movements by Divisions, Troop Leaders take post in the same manner, in front of the second Files from the pivot or directing flanks of the first and fourth Divisions (see fig. e).

10. When marching in Column of Troops, the Troop Leaders are answerable for their distances. The Troop Guides are answerable for their covering, and for preserving the proper distance of front ranks from Troop Leaders.

The Troop Leader at the head of the Column rides in front of the Pivot Guide, and is answerable for the rate and direction. The Squadron Leaders superintend the whole. In mounting, however, mounted and dismounted, the Troop Leaders at the head of the column to be in front of the second File from the pivot flank.

11. When retiring in Column, or Oblique Echelon of Troops, by “Fours About,” Troop Serrefiles lead in front of the second Files, and attend to their distances; but the words of command still proceed from the Troop Leaders. The Pivot Guide of each Troop turns about (outwards) and rides on the flank of his rear-rank.

12. In Movements by Fours, each Troop Leader is on the pivot flank of his leading Fours (see fig. f), except when a Column of Troops takes ground to its flank, on which occasion he leads in front of the pivot of his leading Fours. Also, when a Quarter-distance Column takes ground to its reverse flank, the Leaders of Troops on the reverse hand lead in front of their Pivots, moving out when the Fours wheel, and resuming their posts when they front.

13. When marching by Half Sections, the Troop Leader is on the pivot flank of his leading Half Section.

14. The positions assigned to the Squadron Leader, are those to be taken up when the Formation is completed; while it is in progress his post is wherever he can best superintend his men and can best be heard by them, except during the advance in Line or Echellon, when he leads his Squadron.
15. The Major should as far as possible be on the reverse flank, and avoid riding in the Squadron intervals. When there are two Majors, the senior should superintend the right and the junior the left wing, and command them when detached.

Section III.

COMMANDS.

1. All Commands must be given in a firm, loud, and clear tone; every Officer must therefore be accustomed to give such commands, even to small bodies, loud enough not only to be heard by such bodies as are immediately under his orders, but also by the Leaders of others who are dependent on his motions.

2. The Commanding Officers of Regiments give, and repeat all general Commands. When a movement is to be executed, they give the general caution, which is immediately to be repeated by the Squadron Leaders, who then proceed to give the preparatory words necessary for executing the Movement indicated. When those words have been given, the executive word or sound "March," from the Commanding Officer, (repeated, quickly and distinctly, by the Squadron Leaders,) puts the whole into motion. A Squadron Leader may frequently not be able to hear his Commanding Officer's word of command, but he should always hear it repeated by the Squadron Officer nearest to him.

3. The Trot being the pace of Manœuvre, it is never to be sounded previous to the sound "March," it being understood that when no pace is given, it is the "Trot." When it is required either to Walk or Gallop, those preliminary sounds will of course be given.

4. Squadrons must be told off as Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, and they must be re-numbered off, by Squadron Leaders, by command of the Commanding Officer, after every movement by which their positions may have been changed, whether in Line or Column.

5. When the Troops composing a Squadron are to move, or wheel, in the same manner, and at the same time, the command is given by the Squadron Leader; but when differently, or successively, the command is given by each Troop Leader.

6. When a general order is not distinctly heard by a part of the Line, each Regimental Commander (when the intention is obvious) will conform as quickly as possible to the Movement.
which he sees executed on his right or left, according to the point from whence he perceives it to begin.

7. When several regiments manoeuvre together, the Commanding Officer sometimes gives his orders of Caution or Execution to the Commander of the Regiment, with which the Movement or Formation is to commence; and each Regimental Commander repeats the orders, without delay, to his Squadron Leaders.

8. When any combined Movement is to be made, which requires previous explanation, it must be communicated clearly to Commanders of Corps by detached Officers, before the execution commences.

9. The several Chiefs of Brigades watch over and direct their respective bodies; they repeat the general orders of execution given, and announce such preparatory ones as are verbally sent to them.

Section IV.

PRINCIPLES OF FIELD MOVEMENT.

1. The positions of Squadrons may be changed, but only in cases of necessity, such as when a Squadron or wing rejoins the Regiment after Skirmishing or other detached duty, when it may be convenient for them to reform in different places from those they originally held, or when it may be convenient to make the Formations xvii. from line, and xi., xii., xiii. from open column.

When such a new distribution takes place, the Commanding Officer must order "Number off Squadrons," and the Regiment will then remain in that new organization, until otherwise ordered.

Inasmuch, however, as such changes might create confusion were they to occur only in critical movements before the enemy, it is necessary that Officers and Squadrons should be accustomed to work in any positions, and it is therefore ordered, that in turning out for drill the Regimental Organization of Squadrons should be frequently varied, and further that a change should be made generally once or twice at each day's drill.

2. All wheels of the Squadron, Troop, or Division, from the Halt (unless otherwise ordered), are to be made at the rate of the Trot of manoeuvre. After wheels of a body previously
in movement, the former rate of march will be resumed at the word "Forward."

3. The centre Squadron, or (if the numbers be even) the right centre Squadron, whether the Line consist of one or more Regiments, is to be the Squadron of Direction, unless any other Squadron is specially named by the Commanding Officer.

4. Although it is laid down that all movements should be made from the Halt, yet it is recommended that Regiments should be occasionally exercised on the move (without Markers); but great care must be taken to preserve the distinct character of each Movement; nor should more than Three Movements be executed in succession without a Halt.

5. Should the passage over broken ground, or some such casual circumstance, have deranged the covering of the Open Column, the Commanding Officer may cause the Pivots to be corrected previously to wheeling into Line.

6. The change of direction in Echelon Formations is always made by the word "Right" or "Left" for the degree of wheel required, followed by the word "Forward," as soon as the Troop is parallel to the new Line.

7. The Changes of Front in Line are executed by the Echelon March of Troops, either to the front or rear. The Troops are wheeled, nearly the half of what the Base Troop is ordered to wheel, towards the hand that leads to the New Line, and are conducted, by their inward flanks, to a point about two horses' lengths, either behind, or before, where that flank is to rest in the New Line; each Troop there wheels that degree which will place it parallel to the New Line, and then moves up to it, first passing it and fronting, if the formation be to the rear.

8. Changes of Front of a less degree than one-eighth of the circle are to be made on the Base, by the Squadrons moving entire, as laid down in the observations on Movement No. VI. from Line (p. 177).

9. Changes of Position of the Regiment, from one distant situation to another, are made either in Line, by the direct Echelon, by the oblique Echelon of Troops, by Squadron Columns of Fours or of Divisions, or by the movements of the Open Column.

10. New parallel Positions, being to the front or rear of the old Line, may, if they out-flank, be taken up by the Incline, or by the Oblique Echelon March.

11. A new Position, whose prolongation intersects that of the old one, can be taken by the change of direction of the
Regiment in Line, by the Oblique Echelon March, or by the Troop, Squadron, or Regimental Column; and the movement is begun from that hand which is nearest the Base of the New Position.

12. In Changes of Position by Oblique Echelon, the Troops wheel half the amount of the intended change, then move to the new Position, where the Base Troop again wheels the required degree into the new Alignment, and the Formation is completed in the usual manner.

13. Distant Positions, where circumstances will allow, are easiest and soonest taken by the March of the Open Column. For this purpose the whole Line wheels to the hand ordered, by Troops or Divisions, and moves off in a general Column, or each separate Regimental Column may enter the new Line, where its head or centre is to rest.

14. The leading Regiment of a Line, and perhaps one or two more, may arrive and form on a new Alignment, by any of the methods laid down in Art. 9 of this section, for Regimental Changes of Position; but all the others must move off in separate Regimental Columns, and enter, and form upon the new Alignment, successively.

15. The Changes of Front and Position, by Oblique Echelon, are the safest that can be employed in the presence of, and near to, an Enemy; they are almost equal in security to the march of the Regiment in front, or to a uniform wheel of the Line; they can be used in the most critical situations, where the movements of the open Column could not be risked; and they are more particularly to be used when the enemy's flank is to be gained by throwing a flank forward, or when one's own is to be secured, by throwing it back. The advantages attending them are, the preserving a general front during the March, and enabling a Body to change its Front or Position, either on a fixed or moving point, retaining the power at any moment to stop the movement, form the line, and repel an attack.

16. Although a change in the position of Squadrons in Line should generally be avoided before the enemy, yet situations will occur where it is indispensable, and it therefore cannot be neglected in practice.

For instance a Column, with its Right in front, may arrive on the left of its ground, and be obliged immediately to form up, and support that point, so that the right of the Line will become the Left (see Movement No. XII. from Open Column), or it may be necessary for a Column to form Line to its reverse flank, as nearly as possible upon its own ground (see Movement No. XI. from open Column).
But on the whole it is to be recollected that though such a
change of Regiments in a Line, and of Squadrons in a Regi-
ment, ought to create no real inconvenience, yet, that of the
Troops, or Divisions of the Squadron within itself, would lead
to disorder, and is on all occasions to be studiously avoided.

17. Cavalry acting with Infantry, and required to advance,
can pass through the Infantry Line either in open Columns of
Troops, or Squadron Columns of Divisions, or Fours, or can
advance round the flanks in Single, or Double, Columns of
Troops, forming their line as they move forward.

18. When Cavalry are to withdraw to the rear of a Line of
Infantry, they should retire in Column of Troops, round one
or both flanks of the Infantry, so as to clear their front
quickly, and allow of their opening their fire. If the Infantry
Line consist of several Brigades, it may be advisable for one or
more of the Central Regiments of Cavalry to retire by openings
made for their Columns between the Battalions; but the Line
of Infantry should be disturbed as little as possible. Notice
should in this case be given in due time to the Commanding
Officer of the Infantry Line.

19. When Infantry are thrown into Squares, Cavalry can
always retire between them, in Squadron Columns of Fours,
because there is then no risk of deranging their order.

Section V.

RULES FOR MARKERS AND DRESSING.

1. There will be a Regimental Marker and an Assistant
Regimental Marker, one being attached to each wing.

In all Formations of Line from open and double Column,
and in all changes of Front from Line, the base is given by the
Base Troop Leader, and the Regimental Marker of the wing.

In all other Formations the base is given by the two
Regimental Markers.

In all cases placed by the Adjutant.

Their posts, when not marking, are as follows:

In Line.—In rear of 2nd File from Flank (that next to the
centre of the Regiment) of two Centre Squadrons.

Column of Squadrons.—In rear of 2nd and 3rd File from
the Flank of Second Squadron.
In Dist. Column.—On the Reverse Flank of Leading Squadron. (See fig. A.)
In Column of Troops.—In rear of 2nd and 3rd File from Reverse Flank of rear Troop of Second Squadron.
In Double Column.—In rear of 2nd File from inward Flanks of Rear Troop of Leading Squadrons.
One length from Rear Rank.
N.B.—When the Regiment is composed of three Squadrons, their posts are as follows:—
In Line.—In rear of Centre of Second Squadron.
In Col. of Squadrons.
In ½ Dist. Column.
In Column of Troops.
In Double Column.—In rear of 2nd File from inward (Troop) Flanks of Leading Squadron.

2. When a Line is being formed, the Squadron and Troop Leaders will face their Squadrons, and the Alignment will be taken up within half a foot of their horses' heads. When the dressing is completed, the word "Eyes Front" is given, and the Officers resume their posts a horse's length in front of their Squadrons; always turning their horses about towards the Base, from whatever Squadron it may be given.

3. When an accurate dressing is required after an Advance in Line, the caution is given, "By the Squadron of Direction, Dress," repeated by Squadron Leaders, on which the Officers of that Squadron move forward a horse's length, but do not turn their horses about. The Troop Leaders raise their swords for a Base, and, with the Squadron Leader, are dressed by the Major, or Officer appointed.

On the word "March" the men of the Squadron of Direction move up to their proper distance from their Officers, and the other Squadrons (Officers and Men) take up the dressing at a walk, each Squadron receiving from its Leader the word, "Eyes Front," as soon as steady.

4. In all Dressing in Column, the Leaders will be at one horse's length from the pivot Guide, and facing the flank of the Column. When the Dressing is completed the Leaders give the word "Eyes Front," and then take post.

5. When a Division, Troop, or Squadron, is merely to correct its dressing by its own directing flank, the word "Dress" is employed; but when it is to move up bodily, and take up its dressing from a previously formed Line, the command to be given is "Dress up;" for instance, when an Open Column forms line on its leading Troop, that Troop, after advancing the prescribed
four horses' lengths, is halted, and receives the word "Dress;" but the remaining Troops successively halting short of the Alignment, are moved up to it by the command "Dress up."

6. In successive Formations of Line, each Squadron Leader gives the word "Eyes Front," as soon as his own Squadron is properly dressed, and the Officers of the next are arrived upon the Alignment; upon this word the Officers front, and move up to their posts at a horse's length from the Ranks; and the men look to their front; but the Base Officer and Marker invariably remain posted until the whole Regiment is formed. In case of the first formed Squadron being required to act immediately, as may sometimes occur on service, the next Squadron gives the Base for those not yet arrived on the Line.

7. Officers and Markers employed in giving Bases for Lines, raise the hilts of their swords to the height of the cheek, keeping the blade perfectly upright, and with the edge to the front. Markers for the covering of Columns turn the edge sideways.

8. In changes of Front from Line, and of Formations of Line from Open Column, the Base consists of the Leader of the Base Troop, and the Marker of the wing to which that Troop belongs. This Marker, immediately upon the Caution, places himself, with his sword raised, facing to where the flank File of the Base Troop will stand after it shall have wheeled or moved up; and the Leader of that Troop quits his post the moment he has given the preparatory command to his Troop to wheel or move up, and places himself, with his sword raised facing to where the centre of his Troop will arrive. Both he and the Marker remain fixed till the Regiment is formed. The Leader of the Squadron, from which the Base is thus given, goes to the outside of the Base the moment he has repeated the Caution, to see that it is in its proper direction. Having corrected it, if necessary, he places himself quickly in line with it, facing to where the centre of his Squadron will arrive. Meantime the Major or Adjutant rides, immediately upon the Caution, to the Base placed by the Leader of the Squadron from which it is given, and sees that the Leaders of the other Squadrons and Troops dress correctly upon it as they arrive in line.

9. In forming Quarter Distance Column, the Base for the Covering consists of the two Regimental Markers, who are placed by the Adjutant, immediately upon the Caution, twelve yards apart facing to the pivot flank of the intended Column.

10. In Deployment the Base consists of the two Regimental Markers, who are placed by the Major (immediately upon the Caution) in front of the Base Squadron, at four horses'
Part 3.} MARKERS AND DRESSING. 157

length from the head of the Column, except when deploying into Line with Infantry when they will be placed at six inches from the heads of the horses of the front rank at the head of the Column; the Adjutant at the reverse flank, and the Regimental Marker at the Pivot.

11. When a Regiment, in Open Column, enters a distant position, the Adjutant marks the point of entry. When a Column changes its direction, he marks the point where the change is to be made. If the changes are frequent, the Regimental Marker assists him.

12. When a Regiment forms Quarter Distance Column, the Adjutant places the Base for the Covering of the Pivots; he also places the Base when the Quarter Distance Column changes its front, countermarches its Squadrons, reverses its front, or forms line to its flank.

13. When a Line is ordered to "Change Front" on one of its flanks, no Troop or Squadron is to be named in the Caution, but such change is to be made on the flank Troop, which will give the Base accordingly.

14. In Changes of Front on a central part of the Line, the particular Squadron must be indicated; and it is then understood, that if the Change of Front is to the right, the right Troop, but if to the left, the left Troop, of that Squadron gives the Base.

15. In Formations of Line on a central part of an Open Column, the intended Squadron must be named in the Caution; and if the Formation is to the front, the leading Troop, but if to the rear, the rear Troop, of the named Squadron gives the Base.

16. When a Brigade changes its front, or forms Line from Open Column, the Base given by the Troop on which the Change or Formation takes place, serves as the general Base for the whole Line, but as soon as the first Squadron of the next Regiment has arrived and formed on the Line, the Base Officer and Marker drop their swords and return to their usual places.

17. When a Brigade assembles in Contiguous Columns, the Base for the Regiment formed upon is given by the Adjutant and Regimental Marker, posted by a Staff Officer; the pivot flank of each other Column is marked by its Regimental Marker.

18. When the Caution is given for a Brigade to deploy on one of the Squadrons of a central or rear Regiment Commanding Officers are answerable for immediately sending up to the head of the Column the Adjutant and Regimental Marker who form the base (and are posted by a Staff Officer).
Section VI.

TAking up Points of Formation.

The general direction of the Alignment upon which a Column is to form must always be considered before entering upon it, two objects being usually determined as points of direction for the extremities of the intended Line.

If the Column is to enter the Alignment at one of those objects, no difficulty occurs in there placing the Base, pointing upon the other more distant object; but if the Column is to enter the intended Alignment at any central or intermediate point, or if, as may often be the case, the objects which have been determined as a guidance for the direction of the Line are distant or inaccessible, the Alignment in which the Base is to be placed for the Formation to commence must be ascertained by the following method, in which Officers and Non-commissioned Officers should be frequently practised.

Suppose the mill and the steeple are two distant or inaccessible objects, between which a Column is to enter, in order to deploy, or form Line in any other manner. The two objects in question are pointed out to two Officers or Non-commissioned Officers, A and B, usually the Adjutant and Serjeant-Major. A chooses one of the objects (suppose the mill) as his regulating point and places himself with his side towards it, and his horse's head towards the intended Alignment.

B instantly posts himself about fifty yards from A, on that
side of him which is farthest from the mill, with his horse's head also towards the intended Alignment, and dresses himself exactly upon A and the mill.

As soon as he has placed himself correctly as described, he gives the word "Ready," upon which they both start, A riding straight forward at a steady canter towards where the head of the Column is to follow, occasionally glancing his eye towards the steeple; and B riding a certain degree faster, so as to keep the mill still exactly in a line with A as he advances, and at the same time preserving his fifty yards' interval from his flank.

As they thus approach the intended Alignment, A must begin to fix his eye upon the steeple, and also to observe B as he appears coming into line with it, gradually slackening his own pace to a walk, to allow of B keeping his dressing more steadily.

The moment he sees B come into line with the steeple, A stops his horse, giving the word "Halt," to B, and raising his sword: B, halting instantly, likewise raises his sword, both turn their horses quietly to the right-about, and the points are thus established, upon which the advancing Column is enabled to place its own Base in the usual manner, and proceed with its Formation or Deployment. Where there are more Regiments than one, the above method will be observed for the Regiment of direction, the Adjutants of the other Regiments arriving in succession, and placing themselves as the Points of Entry in prolongation of the Base thus given.

---

Section VII.

MARCH IN LINE, DIRECTION AND ALIGNMENT.

The March of the Line in front is the most difficult and most important of all movements. It is requisite near the enemy, and immediately precedes the attack. In proportion to the extent of front, and the rapidity required, does the difficulty increase, therefore, too much exactness in the execution of it cannot be observed.

1. When marching in Line, the men of each Squadron dress to their centre and the Squadron Leaders line with and preserve their intervals from each other, and the Squadron of Direction; but with as much reference as possible to that Squadron. The Leader of the Squadron of Direction takes a point in the distance perpendicular to his front, and selects intermediate objects upon which he is to move. Both the Troop Leaders of the Squadron of Direction take post in front of the third Files from the Flanks.
during the advance, and raise their swords, in order to furnish a Base for the Squadron Leaders, to whom their own Troop Leaders look for the dressing.

2. One of the Troop Leaders of the Squadron of Direction regulates the Base of the Alignment. In the advance he must endeavour to keep this Base square to the front, and parallel to the original Alignment, by increasing or slackening his pace, as he sees occasion. The other Troop Leader conforms, by keeping himself dressed on the Squadron Leader, and the Officer of Alignment.

3. If the First, Central, or any Intermediate Squadron, is the one of Direction, the Right Troop Leader of that Squadron is the Officer of Alignment; if on the left of the centre, the Left Troop Leader. The Major or Adjutant superintends the Officer of Alignment.

4. It is an essential rule for all other Squadrons to be, if anything, rather behind the Squadron of Direction, in advancing in line.

5. When a change of direction is to be given to an advancing Line, the Officer of Alignment will increase or slacken his pace, according to the instructions he receives; the Leader of the Squadron of Direction will gradually circle into the new direction, the other Troop Leader conforming to the change, and the Leaders of the other squadrons gradually taking up the new dressing. When the desired alteration of the direction of the advancing line is completed, the word "Forward" is given.

6. Inclining or oblique echelon is the method by which the Line gains ground to the flank, without altering its parallel direction. At the word "Forward" or troops half right or left it resumes its direct advance. During the incline, the Flank Squadron, on the hand to which the incline is made, becomes the Squadron of Direction.

7. When parts of the Line are impeded by any inequalities of the ground, or other obstacle, they are to be passed with regularity and order, by filing from the Right of Fours,—by breaking into Half Sections, Fours, or Divisions from the Right or Left of Squadrons, or by doubling Squadrons, Troops, or Divisions, into column, each body re-forming as soon as clear. No exercise is more important, or requires greater practice.

8. When there is sufficient extent of ground, it should be a frequent practice to make long Advances in Line, changing the direction of the Line, by inclining, or by the oblique echelon, and again advancing, occasionally altering the pace by in-
MARCH IN LINE, DIRECTION AND ALIGNMENT. 161

cessing it from the walk to the gallop, and again decreasing it from the gallop to the walk, by gradual degrees.

9. As a general rule, almost every movement at a Field Day should be followed by an Advance in Line.

10. After the March in Line, on the words "Halt, Dress," each Squadron halts and dresses by its centre; their Leaders by the Squadron of Direction; and if the dressing of the general Line is to be afterwards corrected, it ought to begin at, and be taken up from, the Squadron of Direction.

11. Where the whole Line is to be newly dressed, and where circumstances admit, much facility attends the operation, if such an Alignment is taken, as causes a dressing forward, however small, of every squadron that composes it.

12. If the Squadron intervals are false in the centre of a Line, they must remain so till corrected by order, and by a separate operation of flank marching; but the Leader of a Flank Squadron should never lose a moment in correcting his interval, if false, because its correction does not interfere with any other part of the line.

In the Retreat of the Line the same rules apply as in the Advance, the Squadron Serresfiles acting as Leaders.

In retreat before the enemy, it is discretionary with the Commanding Officer to order "Troop Leaders to the Rear," on which they will gallop round the Squadron flanks and lead to the rear, reposting themselves the moment that the Line is fronted.

Section VIII.

FORMATION FOR ATTACK.

1. The formation of a body of Cavalry for an Attack, depends much upon the description and dispositions of the Enemy, and also upon the nature of the ground; which should be reconnoitred (when it is practicable) both to the Front, and Flanks.

2. The Force should be formed in three distinct bodies, distinguished as "First Line," "Support," and "Reserve."

The "First Line" should seldom consist of more than one-third of the whole Force; it should be formed in Line.

The "Support" may be either in Line, or in Double Open Columns, from the centres of Regiments.

The "Reserve" should be in similar Columns, or in Regimental Quarter-Distance Columns.

3. The ordinary distance from the "First Line" to the "Support," as well as from the "Support" to the "Reserve,"
must be 400 yards, that distance being considered sufficient to preserve the "Support" from being disordered, should the "First Line" be forced to retreat.

4. The "Support" and the "Reserve" must steadily follow the advance of the "First Line," maintaining their respective distances; but the moment the "First Line" is seen commencing its charge, they must both draw up to a walk, and continue at that pace till the evident success of the "First Line" warrants their more rapid advance, or till (in the event of its failure) it has retired, and cleared the front of the "Support" so as to enable the latter to attack with full effect, and probably convert the failure of the "First Line" into success; but for this it is essential that the Officers of the "First Line" should use every exertion to get their men away round the Flanks, and rally them behind the "Reserve," instead of their falling back upon the "Support," and destroying the steadiness, and order, of its attack.

5. Where the Enemy's Force is ascertained to consist solely of Infantry and Guns, without Cavalry, the distance of the "Support" from the "First Line" may be considerably lessened, and in some cases of this sort the "Reserve" may be dispensed with; and it is almost essential for success that, if the Enemy have thrown themselves into Squares, the fire of Artillery should be brought to bear upon them before the Attack is made.

Section IX.

THE CHARGE OR ATTACK.

1. The great force of Cavalry is more in the offensive than in the defensive; therefore, the Attack is its principal object.

2. All the different movements of the Line should tend to place it in the most advantageous situation for attack. The Charge is that attack, made with the greatest velocity and regularity possible, to break the order of the opposite enemy, which will always ensure his defeat.

3. When the Line is to Charge, the words of command are "March!" "Gallop!" "Charge!" "Walk!" and "Halt!"

4. The Commanding Officer should lead at such a pace as that the Flanks and Rear Rank may always keep up; but at the same time, it is most essential that the Flanks should not press before the Centre. Every alteration of pace must be made as gradually as possible, and at the same instant, by the whole Line.

5. Whatever distance a Line has to go over, it is desirable,
if the nature of the ground will permit, that it should move at a brisk trot, till within two hundred and fifty yards of the enemy, and then gallop, making a progressive increase, till within forty or fifty yards of the point of attack, when the word "Charge" will be given, and the gallop made with as much rapidity as the body can bear in good order. Of course, the distances here laid down must, in many cases, be left to the discretion of the Commanding Officer, and are only meant for general guidance, at ordinary Field Days.

6. Any closing or crowding of the Files at the instant of the Charge tends to impede the free movement of each horse, which at no time requires to be more independent than when galloping at his utmost exertion; and every rub, to right or left, diminishes that effort in a degree, and should be avoided.

7. At the instant of the shock, the horse, although kept in hand, should be pressed forward by the leg, and spur, if necessary.

8. It is from the uniform velocity of a Line that its greatest effect is to be derived; it must, therefore, on no account, be so much hurried as to bring up the horses blown or even distressed, to the attack.

9. In every part of the Charge, the Centre of each Squadron must be very exact in following the Leader, and the men particularly attentive in keeping up to, and dressing to, their centre, without closing or opening, and in taking care that the Flanks are not too forward. They should have their horses well in hand, and perfectly square to the front.

10. When the shock of the Charge has broken the order of the opposite enemy, one or both of the Flank Troops in the case of a single Regiment, or Flank Squadrons in the case of a Brigade, may be ordered to pursue and follow up the advantage, opening out, and covering the front and intervals, whilst the remainder of the Line keeps together, and supports; but its great object should be instantly to rally, and to renew its efforts in a body.

11. If the Line fails in its attack, Officers must endeavour to prevent their men from falling back on their Support. They must try to lead them round its flanks, and rally them in the rear. Nothing can be more fatal than a disordered body throwing itself back upon a Line advancing to its assistance.

12. In the real Charge, the halt of the Line depends upon the nature of the resistance which is met with; in ordinary exercise after the Charge, the word "Walk" will be given, when the pace will be gradually decreased, and a distance of thirty or forty yards will be allowed before the final "Halt."
13. There can be no occasion on which it is eligible for Cavalry to wait and receive the attack. Though circumstances of situation may prevent a Line from advancing much, it should never absolutely stand still, to receive the shock; otherwise its defeat is almost inevitable.

14. An attack in Line may be very conveniently and safely conducted by the "Advance in short Echelon" from the Squadron of Direction; especially when the ground is indifferent, and the Line has been hastily and imperfectly formed. The Leader of each Squadron dresses by the Serresfiles of that which precedes him.

15. In the advance for attack, the Sword will be carried; in the Charge, it will be brought to the "Engage" (by the front rank only), and, on the Order to "Walk," it will be sloped.

16. It is discretionary to "Take Order" at any time over broken ground.

Section X.

INSPECTION OR REVIEW OF THE REGIMENT.

Formation of the Regiment for Parade Movements.

The figure A shows the Formation of the Regiment.

1. The Commanding Officer takes post two horses' lengths in front of the Leader of the Centre Squadron. The other Field Officers on the right and left flanks of the line of Officers, &c.; and are afterwards employed to assist in the field, in whatever manner the Commanding Officer thinks fit.

2. The Adjutant and Staff in one rank, on the right of the Regiment, at a horse's length interval from it, dressing by the front rank; the Band or Trumpeters in two ranks, on the right of the Staff, and at a like interval. Kettle Drummer in front of the centre of the front rank of the Band.

3. The Regiment being formed on the ground where the Reviewing Officer is to be received, a point is to be marked about 150 yards in front of the centre, at which he generally is expected to take his Station, and that spot is to be considered the point to work upon.

4. The Regiment takes order in the manner prescribed in Part II., Sect. XII., p. 113, the Officers and Rear rank impressing by the Squadron of Direction.

When the Reviewing Officer presents himself before the
centre, the words "Eyes Centre—Draw Swords,"* are given; the Officers coming down at the last motion to the position of the salute;† the Standards salute such persons only, as, from Rank and Regulation, are entitled to that honour; the Band plays, or Trumpets sound, according to the rank of the Reviewing Officer; after which the Officers recover their swords with the Commanding Officer.

6. The Reviewing Officer then goes towards the right, accompanied by the Commanding Officer, and the whole remain steady while he passes along the Regiment, during which time the Band will play, or Trumpets sound, and they will cease when he is leaving the Line.

7. While the Reviewing Officer is proceeding to place himself in the front, the Commanding Officer orders "Take Close Order—March."

Marching Past.

8. When the Caution is given to "March past by Squadrons," the Adjutant marks the passing line, by placing the Regi-

---

* The time to be taken from the Commanding Officer.
† Non-commissioned Officers, when employed to replace Officers, do not salute.
mental Marker at point b, about forty yards on the right of the centre, facing the Regiment, and on a line about four yards in advance of that upon which the Reviewing Officer is supposed to take post. The Assistant Marker places himself at c, at an equal distance on the left of the centre, dressing by the Regimental Marker and the Adjutant, who posts himself at e, about twelve yards beyond that Marker until the Assistant Marker has placed himself correctly.

9. Two Serresile Non-commissioned Officers or Farriers ride out to the front, halt and turn about, when they arrive at a and d, each outflanking the Regiment by about twenty yards, and dress by the two Regimental Markers.

10. When two Regiments are to march past, the points a and b are furnished by the First Regiment, the points c and d by the Second Regiment. When there are three Regiments, the points b and c are furnished by the Second, and when more, by one of the Regiments in the centre of the Line.

11. When more than two Regiments are to march past, the points a and d are to be given by the flank Regiments.

12. On the word "March past by Squadrons" "Slope Swords," repeated by Squadron Leaders, the latter (still remaining opposite the centres of their Squadrons) give the word "Troops Right Wheel." On the word "March," the Staff fall out; the head of the Column receiving the words "Left Wheel—Forward," when opposite the Marker, at a; and each Squadron, when its leading troop arrives within wheeling distance of a, receives the words "Left wheel into Line—Forward," followed by "Eyes Right." On arriving at b, the words are given "Take Order—Carry Swords."

13. The Band is at a distance equal to the breadth of a Troop, in front of the Column; and having passed the Reviewing Officer, it wheels to its left, clears the flank of the Column, then wheels to the left about, and plays while the Regiment is passing.

14. The Officers being at the prescribed distance in front, when within ten yards of the Reviewing Officer, the Officers salute, taking their time from the right. The Adjutant marches past two horses' lengths in rear of the third File from the right flank of the rear Squadron. The Majors in rear of the whole; the senior one horse's length behind the Adjutant, with the junior one horse's length on his left.

15. When the Rear Rank has passed the Reviewing Officer

* The ranks remain closed.
ten yards, Officers recover their swords with the Officers on
the right.

16. On arriving at the Marker c, the words "Take
Close Order," and "Slope Swords," are given, on which the
Serrefile Officers take post in the rear.

17. Each Squadron, on reaching the point d of the Passing
Line, receives the words "Left Wheel Forward."

18. As soon as the last Squadron has wheeled at the point d,
the Commanding Officer gives the word "Form Troops" upon
which the right troop of each Squadron, continuing its march,
the left Troop receives from its Leader the words "Left Troop
Halt,—Right incline—March" followed by "Forward" as
soon as it covers in column. The word "Trot" is then given,
and the Column moves round the square, each Troop wheeling
at the several angles, till the Leading Troop arrives within its
own breadth of the commencement a, of the Passing Line,
when the First Squadron receives from its Leader the word
"Left Wheel into Line," followed by "Forward," "Eyes
Right," and advances till within about ten yards of the point b;
the word is then given "Form Quarter Distance Column;" the
First Squadron halts; the others, having successively wheeled
into line the same as the First, move up into Quarter Distance
Column.

19. The Regiment will then "rank past," either by Files,
or by Sections. If by Files—

On the word "Rank past by Files," the First Squadron
Leader gives the words "Carry Swords," "Advance by Files
from the Right," "March." Each Squadron advances from
its right by files, first a Front Rank and then a Rear Rank
man. The distance from Head to Croup is four feet (half a
horse's length). The Squadron Leader, Right Troop Leader,
Right Troop Serrefile, and Squadron Serrefile precede the
Squadron, and the Left Troop Leader and Left Troop Serrefile
rank past in rear of it. The Lieutenant-Colonel precedes
the Regiment; and the Adjutant and Major in rear of the whole.
Trumpeters rank past in rear of the Officers at the head of
the Squadron; Farriers in front of the Officers in rear of it.
Standards in rear of the Trumpeters. Officers salute separately
when ten yards from the Reviewing Officer; Squadron
Leaders, after having passed, fall out to the left, and front him,
while their respective Squadrons are passing.

20. Each Squadron forms on reaching d at the end of the
Passing Line, and receives the word "Slope Swords." It then
wheels to the left, and advances sufficiently to allow the other Squadrons to form and wheel successively at D, and march up in Quarter Distance Column behind it.

21. If the Regiment is to rank past by Sections instead of by Files, the Squadron Leader gives the words "Carry Swords — Advance by Sections from the Right;" the right-hand Section advances four horses' lengths, the remainder wheel "Fours right."

"March." The leading Section advances, extending from its right, and the remainder follow and extend, first a Front rank Section and then a Rear rank Section.

The Squadron Leader, and the Leader and Serrefile of the Right Troop and the Squadron Serrefile form the leading Section of each Squadron; and the Left Troop Leader, and left Troop Serrefile and Farriers the rearmost Section. The Standard and his Escort and the Trumpeters follow the Squadron Leader, Leader of the Right Troop, Troop Serrefile, and Squadron Serrefile. The Officers salute, taking their time from the right.

In ranking past by Sections, there is to be a horse's length from croup to head, and also from knee to knee. Each Squadron forms at the point D, and receives the words "Slope Swords" "Left Wheel—Forward."

22. As soon as the Quarter Distance Column is thus formed, the caution is given "Advance in Column of Troops from the Right" to trot past by Troops or Squadrons. The Right Troop of the First Squadron receives from its Leader the word "RightTroop Advance." On the words "Trot," "March," the Right Troop advances, the left Troop receiving from its Leader "Left Troop," "Right, Incline, March," as it gets room, and "Forward," when it covers the preceding Troop in Column. In the same manner, the remaining Squadrons move successively into Column of Troops, (fig. D,) and trot round; when if the trotting past is by Troops, each Troop will receive from its Leader the word "Left Wheel," followed by "Forward," at the angles.

23. On entering upon the Passing Line at A, Troop Leaders, after the wheel, take post in front of the second File from the Right, giving the words "Eyes Right," and at B "Carry Swords," and on arriving at C, they give the word "Slope Swords:" after the wheel at D, they resume their proper posts in front of the second File from the left, giving the word "Eyes Left." The Lieutenant-Colonel trots past in front of the centre of the Leading Troop, the Majors in rear of the column.
24. While upon the Passing Line the Squadron Leader precedes the Right Troop Leader, the Squadron Serrefile marches on a line with the Right Troop Serrefile, in rear of the right flank of the right Troop. The Standard and his Escort trot past in the places laid down for them in Open Column. Troop Serrefiles are also at their usual posts.

25. The Column having arrived upon the original ground, and the Regiment being required to Gallop past, the front will be reversed by the wheel about of Troops or Divisions, and the Column will Gallop past left in front, either by Troops or Squadrons. If by Squadrons they will be formed by the Troops wheeling into line at n, and Troops will again be formed by each Squadron in succession on arriving at b.

While upon the Passing Line the Officers are posted as in Trotting past, except in the substitution of "Left" for "Right."

The Column on arriving on the Parade Line, wheels into Line and halts.*

Observation. The Parade Movements should occasionally conclude with a Charge in Line up to the Markers; to be executed strictly in accordance with the principles laid down at Section IX., page 162.

26. When the Regiment begins to perform Field Movements, the Farriers and Band fall out; one Trumpeter remaining with the Commanding Officer, and one with each Squadron, to repeat the soundings.

27. When more than one Regiment is to march past, the original, or Parade Line, is to be marked by two Farriers placed at the extreme right and left, on the caution to march past. They rejoin their Regiments when the Parade Movements are ended.

28. In forming a Brigade for Review, the Base of the Officers, and also of the Ranks, is given, (as in Art. 3, Sect. V., p. 155,) from the Squadron of Direction of a central Regiment, the other Regiments dressing to it accordingly.

29. At the conclusion of a Review, the Regiment or Line advances in Parade Order, by the Squadron of Direction, taking order, and carrying Swords on the march, and halting and saluting, when within forty or fifty yards of the Reviewing Officer.

* Should the Sword Exercise be required, it is at this period it will be usually performed.
30. Previous to the Regiment marching past, when the Staff Officers are ordered to fall out, viz., the Paymaster, Quartermaster, Surgeon, Assistant Surgeon, and Veterinary Surgeon, the Riding Master will remain and be posted as a Serrefile, and march past and go through all the Parade Movements with the Regiment, and afterwards, from the position of a Serrefile Officer, he will pay attention to the riding of the officers and men during the manoeuvres.

The same applies to the Foot Parade of the Regiment, except with regard to the superintendence of the riding.

31. Band Masters are not to appear at Inspections before a General Officer in Undress Uniform. If Civilians, they are not to appear at all.

On all mounted and dismounted Parades the Band will be formed in two Ranks, with the Kettle Drummer in front of the centre of the front rank. When marching past with open ranks, and on all occasions when moving, he will be in rear of the centre of the rear rank of the Band; and when the Regiment salutes a Reviewing Officer, on both these occasions the proper flourish of Trumpets will be sounded.

32. When the Sword Exercise is performed by a Regiment on the move, Squadron Leaders do not perform it.

33. During the Parade Movements Farriers will be posted in their proper places in the Serrefile Rank, and go through the Parade Movements. They will fall out before the Regiment commences to manoeuvre.

---

FIELD MOVEMENTS.

1. In detailing the Field Movements, it has been deemed sufficient to lay them down as performed from the Right; to perform them from the Left, it will only be necessary to substitute, in the Cautions and Commands, the word Left for Right, and Right for Left.

2. Fours may be put about and fronted again, without halting, in throwing a flank back, as in changes of front or position, or in retiring in line, or by alternate Squadrons.
Section XI.

MOVEMENTS FROM LINE.

Movement No. I. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated by \{ "Change Front, Half Right." \}

Leader of the Base Troop, "Right Troop, Half Right."

Leader of the Troop next the Base, "Left Troop, Advance."

Leaders of the other Squadrons, "Troops, Quarter Right."

Commanding Officer, repeated by \{ "March." \}

Squadron Leaders,

On the word "March," the whole move as follows:

The Base Troop wheels half right, and receives from its Leader the words "Halt, Dress."

The Troop next the Base advances, till its right uncovers the left of the Base Troop; it then receives from its leader the word "Right," followed by "Forward, Halt, Dress up."

The other Troops wheel quarter right, and then, receiving the word "Forward" from the Squadron Leaders, advance in echelon towards the new Line. Each, on approaching its

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader and the Marker of the Right Wing.
place, receives from its Leader the word "Right," followed by "Forward," and on arriving on a line with the Rear Rank of the preceding Troop, "Halt, Dress up."

Movement No. II. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

Leader of the Base Troop, "Right Troop, Right Wheel."
Leader of the Troop next the Base, "Left Troop, Half Right."
Leaders of the other Squadrons, "Troops, Half Right."

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

"March."

On the word "March," the Base Troop wheels to the right, and receives from its Leader the words "Halt, Dress."

The other Troops wheel half right, and then, receiving the word "Forward" from the Squadron Leaders, and the Leader of the Troop next the Base, advance in echelon, towards the new line, and form in the manner directed in No. I.

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader and the Marker of the Right Wing.
Movement No. III. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated by \{ "Change Front, Half Squadron Leaders,"
Leader of the Base Troop, "Left Troop, Half Right."
Leader of the Troop next the Base, "Right Troop, Fours about," followed by "Half Right," as soon as the Fours have gone about.
Leaders of the other Squadrons, "Fours about," followed by "Troops Quarter Right," as soon as the Fours have gone about.
Commanding Officer, repeated by \{ "March."

The word "March," the Base Troop wheels half right, and receives from its Leader the words "Halt, Dress."

The Troop next the Base wheels half right, receives from its Leader the word "Forward," and when it has passed the line one horse's length, "Halt, Front, Dress up."

The other Troops wheel quarter right, and receiving from the Squadron Leaders the word "Forward," retire in echelon towards the new line. Each, on approaching its place, receives from its Leader the word "Right," followed by "Forward," and when it has passed the line one horse's length, "Halt, Front, Dress up."

Observation.—In changing front "Half Left Back" the Fours should be put Left about.

* The Base is given by the Left Troop Leader and the Marker of the Left Wing.
Movement No. IV. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated by \{ \color{red} "Change Front, Right Back." \}

Leader of the Base Troop, \color{red} "Left Troop, Right Wheel." \n
Leader of the Troop next the Base, \color{red} "Right Troop, Fours about," followed by \"Right Wheel,\" as soon as the Fours have gone about.

Leaders of the other Squadrons, \color{red} "Fours about," followed by \"Troops, Half Right," as soon as the Fours have gone about.

Commanding Officer, repeated by \{ \color{red} "March." \}

Squadron Leaders,

On the word \color{red} "March," the Base Troops wheels to the right, and receives from its Leader the words \color{red} "Halt, Dress." \n
The Troop next the Base, having wheeled to the right, receives from its Leader the word \color{red} "Forward;" and when it has passed the line one horse's length, \color{red} "Halt, Front, Dress up."

The other Troops wheel half right, and receiving from the Squadron Leaders the word \color{red} "Forward," retire in echelon towards the new line, and form in the manner directed in No. III.

Observation.—In changing front Left back the Fours should be put Left about.

* The Base is given by the Left Troop Leader and the Marker of the Left Wing.
Movement No. V. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated \( \text{"Change Front, Half Right, on the Second Squadron."} \)*
Leader of the Base Troop, \( \text{"Right Troop, Half Right."} \)
Leader of the Troop next on the left of the Base,
Leader of the First Squadron,
Leader of the Third and Fourth Squadrons,
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

\( \text{\"Fours about," followed by \"Troops Quarter Right,\" as soon as the Fours have gone about.} \)
\( \text{\"Troops Quarter Right.\"} \)
\( \text{\"March.\"} \)

On the word \( \text{\"March,\"} \) the Base Troop wheels half right, and receives from its Leader the words \( \text{\"Halt, Dress.\"} \)

The Troops on the right of the Base wheel quarter right, and receiving from the Squadron Leaders the word \( \text{\"Forward,\"} \) retire in echelon towards the new line. Each, on approaching its place, receives from its Leader the word \( \text{\"Right,\"} \) followed by \( \text{\"Forward,\"} \) and, when it has passed the line one horse's length, \( \text{\"Halt, Front, Dress up.\"} \)

The Troop next on the left of the Base advances till its right uncovers the left of the Base Troop; it then receives from its Leader the word \( \text{\"Right,\"} \) followed by \( \text{\"Forward, Halt, Dress up.\"} \)

Observation.—In doing this manoeuvre to the left the Fours should be put Left about.

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader of the Second Squadron and the Marker of the Right Wing.
The other Troops, on the left of the Base, wheel quarter right, and receiving from the Squadron Leaders the word "Forward," advance in echelon towards the new line. Each, on approaching it, receives from its Leader the word "Right," followed by "Forward," and when on a line with the Rear Rank of the preceding Troop, "Halt, Dress up."

Movement No. VI. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,
Leader of the Base Troop, "Right Troop, Right Wheel."
Leader of the Troop next the Base, "Left Troop, Half Right."
Leader of the First Squadron, "Fours about," followed by "Troops, Half Right," as soon as the Fours have gone about.
Leader of the Third and Fourth Squadrons, "Troops Half Right."
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, "March."

On the word "March," the Base Troop wheels to the right, and receives from its Leader the words "Halt, Dress."

The other Troops wheel half right, and proceed to form on the new line, as directed in Movement No. V.

Observation.—In changing front to the left on the Second Squadron the fours should be put left about.

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader of the Second Squadron, the Marker of the Right Wing.
1. If a Change of Front is required of a less degree than in Movement No. I., it is to be done as follows:—

The Caution is given, "Alignment on the —— Squadron," repeated by Squadron Leaders, on which the Troop Leaders of that Squadron, raise their swords; the Right Troop Leader (if that flank is to be advanced) moves forward, and is halted and placed by the Major, or Officer appointed, according to the intended degree of change, the other Troop Leader squaring his horse accordingly, and the Squadron Leader moving up into the line marked by them.

On the word "March," the named Squadron dresses up to its Officers, the other Squadrons take up the line, either by moving forward or retiring. Such as move forward are halted and dressed by their Leaders as they arrive on a line with the Base. Such as have to retire, are put Fours about upon the caution, and retiring upon the word "March," are again fronted, as soon as their Leaders find themselves in line with the Officers of the Base Squadron.

2. If a Change of Front is required of a greater degree than in Movement No. II., it is only necessary to add "Left Forward" to the caution, in order that the Leader of the Base Troop may cause it to wheel into the required direction, and that the Leaders of the other Troops may allow them to over-wheel a little, when they execute their second Half Right on approaching the line.

Movement No. VII. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated} "By Fours, Change Position, by Squadron Leaders, Half Right."*
Squadron Leaders,
Commanding Officer, repeated} "Fours Right."
by Squadron Leaders,

* In Changes of Position, the Base consists of the two Regimental Markers, who are placed by the Adjutant, riding out with them from the Base Squadron, when it approaches within fifty yards of the spot where the Commanding Officer intends to commence forming his line.
On the word "March," the Squadron Leaders having placed themselves in front of their pivots give the words "Half Left," and "Forward," and conduct their Squadrons in the direction of the new position. The Commanding Officer points out to the Leader of the First Squadron the point where the right is to rest, and for which he is to lead straight, and at a steady pace.

The relative interval of the heads of Squadrons from each other is preserved from the First Squadron. Each, as it successively arrives within four horses' lengths of the line, receives the word "Front Form" from its leader, who dresses it from the right, and then resumes his place.

**Observations.** A Change of Position, "to the Right," is made on the same principle.

This and the following movement by Fours are applicable where the ground is broken or intersected, and where the new Position will outflank the old one.

These movements may be executed by a Column of Divisions, when the Squadrons amount to forty-eight files.

Where the nature of the ground will permit, and especially in presence of an Enemy, Changes of Position of the regiment generally best executed by the oblique echelon march of
Troops. The Base Troop moves off its ground, and advances the same as the others until the line is ordered to be formed upon it,* when it wheels to complete the degree of change directed. For this purpose, the words of command will be, "By Echelon of Troops—Change Position Half Right—to the Right—Half Right Back—or Right Back."

Observation.—Whenever the left is thrown back the fours should be put left about.

Movement No. VIII. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, "By Fours, Change Position, Half Right, Back."*

"Fours Left."

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, "March."

On the word "March" the Squadron Leaders having placed themselves in front of their pivots, give the words "Half Left," "Forward," and conduct the Squadrons in the direction of the new Position.

The Commanding Offi-

* The Base is placed in the same way as in the other modes of changing Position.
cer points out to the Leader of the Fourth Squadron the point where the left of the Regiment is to rest, and he leads accordingly so as to arrive where the right of his own Squadron will stand in the line.

The relative interval of the heads of Squadrons from each other is preserved from the Fourth Squadron. As each Squadron successively arrives where its right is to stand in line, the Leader gives the words "Right Wheel," "Forward," to the leading Fours and taking his post in front of the Centre, gives the words "Fours Right, Halt, Dress," when he sees the head of his Squadron arriving at its place.

---

**Movement No. IX. from Line.***

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

Leaders of Squadrons,

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

On the word "March," the Troops wheel to the right, and receive from the Squadron Leaders the words "Halt, Dress," (see fig. 1).

![fig. 1](image)

1. If the Column is wanted for immediate movement, the first part of the caution is omitted, the Commanding Officer giving merely the word "Troops, Right Wheel," repeated by Squadron Leaders, to whom the omission is a sign that instead of "Halt, Dress," they are to give the word "Forward," at the completion of the wheel.

2. When, for convenience of ground, or other reasons, it is desired to form Open Column, maintaining the pivot line, the caution is given, "By Fours, Column of Troops to the Right," repeated by Squadron Leaders who add the words "Fours Right." On the word "March," the Squadron Leaders give the words "Heads of Troops, Right Wheel Forward," and the troops move straight to the rear. Each Troop Leader having moved up to the wheeling point, waits till his Troop has passed

* * When the Squadrons amount to 48 Files, this Movement may be executed by Divisions.
him, and the words "Fours Left, Halt, Dress," being given by the Squadron Leader, dresses his Troop, and places himself in front (see fig. 2).

Observations. If, for any particular purpose, it is desirable to form a Column, so as to be enabled to wheel again into Line, as nearly as possible on the original ground, the Commanding Officer may effect that object by ordering "By the Wheel about of Fours Column of Troops to the Right," repeated by Squadron Leaders, who give the words "Fours about," and "Troops, Right Wheel." At the word "March," the whole wheel to the right; on the completion of which the Squadron Leaders give the words "Halt, Front, Dress." The Troop Leaders dress their Troops to the pivots, and take their posts in front.

Movement No. X. from Line.*

Commanding Officer, repeated \{ "Advance in Column of Troops from the Right."
Leader of the Right Troop, "Right Troop, Advance."
Leader of the Left Troop of the First Squadron, \{ "Left Troop, Right Wheel."
Leaders of the other Squadrons, "Troops, Right Wheel."
Commanding Officer, repeated \{ "March."

On the word "March," the Right Troop advances; the Troop next the leading one having completed its wheel, receives the word "Left Wheel," followed by "Forward," the others wheel to the right, and receive the word "Forward" from the Squadron Leaders. Each, on reaching the wheeling point,

* When the Squadrons amount to 48 Files, this Movement may be executed by Divisions.
receives from its Leader the word "Left Wheel," followed by "Forward," and follows the head of the Column.

**Observation.** The same movement may be done to the rear, substituting "Retire" for "Advance" in the caution, by the Right Troop wheeling right about, and the others wheeling to the right, upon the word "March." But to preserve correct distances, the leading Troop should not move at its full rate of pace for the first twenty yards.
Movement No. XI. from Line.*

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

Leader of the Right Troop of the First Squadron,

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

"Column of Troops from the Right in succession by the Rear."

"Right Troop, Right about, Wheel."

"March."

On the word "March," the Right Troop of the First Squadron wheels about, receives the word "Forward" from its Leader, moves sufficiently to the rear to clear the Serresfiles, then wheels into the intended direction to the right, by word from its Leader, and again receiving the word "Forward," continues its march.

The other Troops are, in succession, wheeled to the right-about by their Leaders, and, moving to the rear in like manner, follow in Column. Officers must take care to wheel in good time to avoid loss of interval.

Movement No. XII. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

Leader of the Left Troop of the Second Squadron,

Leader of the Right Troop of the Third Squadron,

Leader of the Right Troop of the Second Squadron,

Leader of the Left Troop of the Third Squadron,

"Advance in Double Column. Right (or Left) directs."

"Left Troop Advance."

"Right Troop Advance."

"Right Troop Left Wheel."

"Left Troop Right Wheel."

* When the Squadrons amount to 48 Files, this Movement may be executed by Divisions.
Leader of the First Squadron, "Troops, Left Wheel."
Leader of the Fourth Squadron, "Troops, Right Wheel."

On the word, "March," the two centre Troops advance, the other Troops follow as prescribed in Movement No. X. from Line.

The Column of Direction is led by its Pivot: the other is led by its inward Flank.

Movement No. XIII. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, "Form Double Column in rear of the Centre."
Leader of the Left Troop of the Second Squadron, "Left Troop, Advance."
Leader of the Right Troop of the Third Squadron, "Right Troop, Advance."
Leaders of the First Squadron and the Right Troop of the Second Squadron, "Fours Left."
Leaders of the Fourth Squadron and the Left Troop of the Third Squadron, Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

"Fours Right."

"March."

On the word "March," the two centre Troops advance four horses' lengths, and receive the word "Halt, Dress," from their Leaders.

The other Troops having wheeled Fours Right and Fours Left, are led into Column as prescribed in No. XIV. from Line.

The Dressing in both Columns is to the Right, unless otherwise ordered.*

**Observations.**

1. When a Regiment is composed of three Squadrons, the heads of the double Column are formed by the Troops of the Third Squadron, the Left Troop of which will, on the Advance, incline to its left so as to gain the proper interval.

2. The Double Column can move to its flank, or rear, by the wheel about, of Troops or Fours, wheeling up or fronting, in the same manner.

* The Base for the covering of the Pivot of the Right Column is given by the two Regimental Markers.
Movement No. XIV. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, "Column of Troops in rear of the Right."*
Leader of the Base Troop, "Right Troop, Advance."
Leader of the Troop next the Base, "Left Troop, Fours Right."
Leaders of the other Squadrons, "Fours Right."
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, "March."

On the word "March," the Base Troop advances four horses' lengths, and then receives the word "Halt, Dress," from its Leader.

The other Troops having wheeled Fours Right and received the words "Half Right, Forward," each Troop Leader having placed himself on the left of the leading Fours, conducts his Troop towards its place in Column; and halting himself at the point where its left will cover, allows his Troop to pass him, and then giving the words "Fours Left, Halt, Dress," takes his post in front.

Observations. If the formation of an Open Column should be required in front either of Guns, or of the Flank of a Line of Infantry, for purposes of Parade, a quarter distance Column

* The Base for the covering of the Pivots is given by the two Regimental Markers.
must be placed or formed in front of the Guns or Flank Company, and an "Advance in Column of Troops" will then give the Formation desired.

Movement No. XV. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

Leader of the First Squadron, "Fours Left."
Leaders of the Third and Fourth Squadrons,

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

On the word "March."

The First Squadron having gone "Fours Left," and received the words "Half Right, Forward," is conducted by its Leader (on the right flank of the leading Fours) along the front of the Second Squadron. When within a few yards of the spot where his left flank will cover, the Squadron Leader moves forward, and turning about and placing himself just beyond that point, gives the words "Fours Right, Halt, Dress," as soon as his Flank Guidewill cover when wheeled up; then dresses his Squadron, and takes his post on the flank of the Column.

The Third and Fourth Squadrons having gone Fours Right and received the words "Half Right, Forward," are conducted by their Leaders (on the left flank of the leading Fours) towards their places in rear of the Second Squadron. They them-

* The Base for the covering of the Pivots is given by the two Regimental Markers.
selves halt at the point where their left will cover on the base, and allowing their Squadrons to pass them, give the words "Fours Left, Halt, Dress," as soon as all are past, dress their Squadrons, and then take post on the flank of the Column.

The above instructions are applicable to the formation of Close Column on the Flank Squadron, by naming it in the caution, and the Squadron Leaders giving their commands accordingly.

Movement No. XVI. from Line.

When the Regiment in Line is to countermarch on its centre, the caution is given as follows:

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

\[
\begin{array}{l}
\text{"Countermarch on the Centre."*}\\
\text{"Fours about," followed by "Forward," and "Halt," after having advanced five horses' lengths.}\\
\text{"Troops, Right Wheel."}\\
\text{"March."}
\end{array}
\]

On the word "March," the Troops wheel to the right and receive the word "Forward." The leading Troops, having advanced sufficiently to maintain the interval between Central Squadrons, receive from their Leaders the words "Right Wheel, Forward." The Right Troop of the Third Squadron, after moving up four horses' lengths, "Halt, Dress." The

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader of the Third Squadron and Marker of the Left Wing.
Part 3. MOVEMENTS FROM LINE.

remaining Troops of the left wing form as in Movement No. X. from open Column. The Left Troop of the Second Squadron, when it has passed the rear rank of the Base Troop one horse's length, "Halt, Front, Dress up." The remaining Troops of the Right Wing form successively in the same manner.

N.B.—In this movement the Right Wing is always to be put about by Fours.

When the Regiment is composed of an odd number of Squadrons, the Leading Troops of Wings will, as there will be no interval between Central Squadrons to maintain, make the Second wheel to the right immediately after the completion of the first wheel.

Movement No. XVII. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, } "Line to the Rear by the wheel about of Troops."
Leaders of Right Troops, "Right Troop, Advance."
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, } "March."

On the word "March," the Right Troop of each Squadron advances a distance equal to its front, and as soon as the Leader of the Left Troop judges he shall have room, he gives the word to his Troop, "Left Troop, Right about wheel, March," followed by "Halt, Dress," at the completion of the wheel. His word to "march" is the signal for the Leader of the Right Troop to give that Troop the word "Left about wheel," followed by "Forward," after the completion of the wheel, and "Halt, Dress up," when on a line with the rear rank of the Left Troop (fig. 1). It must be an invariable rule that in this Movement the Right Troops advance.
The Squadrons will then be re-numbered off.
The Troop Leaders of the Squadron of Direction raise their swords to give a Base, as soon as that Squadron has formed.

1. If it is desired to restore the proper order of the Squadrons, the caution will be, "Reverse the Front by the wheel about of Troops,"* and the Movement proceeds as already detailed above.

2. Although the above is to be the usual practice, the Line may occasionally be formed to the rear, by the Commanding Officer merely giving the word, "Squadrons, Right about (or Left about), Wheel," repeated by Squadron Leaders; and on the word "March," they wheel about accordingly (see fig. 2). The proper order of Squadrons may be restored by the same method.

3. If it is required to march off in Open Column to a flank, and it is desirable to restore the former order (suppose Right in Front), the caution is, "Column of Troops from the Right of Squadrons to the Left," on which the Right Troops advance four horses' lengths, wheel to the left, and move on along the front of the Left Troops, which, as soon as they have space, advance, wheel, and follow their Right Troops.

N.B.—The larger figures in these Plates denote the positions of the Squadrons when re-numbered off.

* This word of command, "Reverse the Front by the wheel about of Troops," is to be used for a Squadron when acting singly.
Movement No. XVIII. from Line.

DIRECT ECHELLON.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, Leader of the First Squadron, Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{"Advance in Echelon from the Right."} \\
&\text{"First Squadron, Advance."} \\
&\text{"March."}
\end{align*}
\]

On the word "March," the First Squadron advances. The remaining Squadrons receive the word "March" from their Leaders in succession, as soon as each has got a distance equal to its front and interval, from the preceding Squadron.

1. The Retreat in Echelon is exactly like the Advance, each Squadron going Fours about, in sufficient time not to lose its distance from the one before it. In the caution the word "Retire" is substituted for "Advance."

2. Each Squadron should move at a distance equal to its Front and Interval, unless otherwise ordered, and for which Squadron Leaders are responsible.

3. When Squadrons, having advanced in Direct Echellon, are required to form line to the front, a Squadron of Formation is named, whose Troop Leaders give the Base. The Squadrons
MOVEMENTS FROM LINE. [Part 3.

in front (if any) are put about by Fours, and the whole move into line upon the named Squadron.

4. When a Formation into Line is required to the left, the Squadrons wheel to that hand, and form Line upon a named Squadron.

5. If, while advancing in Direct Echelon from the right, it is suddenly required to form an Oblique Line towards the left, the command is given "Oblique Line to the Left," repeated by Squadron Leaders, and the Squadrons, wheeling to that hand a sufficient degree to place them in line, receive the word "Forward" from their Leaders, and immediately advance by the usual Squadron of Direction, correcting their intervals from that Squadron as they move forward.

Movement No. XIX. from Line.

Commanding Officer, repeated \{ "Retire by Alternate Squadrons."

Leaders of even Numbers (Squadrons), "Fours about."

Commanding Officer, repeated \{ "March."

On the word "March," the Second and Fourth Squadrons, having gone Fours about, retire about 100 yards, and receive from its Leader the words "Halt, Front," upon which the First and Third Squadrons receive from their Leaders the word "Fours About," and retire till they have passed the Second and Fourth, the same distance as above. They then front, and the Second and Fourth go about by Fours, and so on, until the Commanding Officer orders the line to be formed on one of the Squadrons, the Troop Leaders of which raise their swords to give the Base.

1. The halting and fronting of each Line may be regulated according to the discretion of the Commanding Officer, by a Trumpet Signal; but it is an invariable rule that the Front Line does not go about until the Retiring Line has halted and Fronted.

2. The Retreat of each Line must be guided by a Squadron of Direction; and either flank may be thrown back, and the direction of the Line changed, during the retreat, if required. The Major takes the temporary command of the Second Line, or even numbers.

3. In the case of a single Regiment this Retreat may be made by alternate Troops, as circumstances may require, the
Left Troops retiring first, by "Fours left about;" but in Brigade it must always be done by Squadrons; for which purpose they must be previously numbered from the right of the whole Line, the even numbers retiring the first.

The following Movement is recommended to be practised occasionally:

"Retire in succession of Wings from the Right," on which the Right Wing wheels Troop Right about and Retires 60 or 80 yards, and re-forms Line. The Left Wing then wheels Troop Left about, and retires to the Alignment of the Right Wing. The Right Wing then retires again, and in this way the Retirement of the Line is effected.
Movement No. XX. from Line.

Passage of Lines to the Front.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

Squadron Leaders,

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

"Advance by Fours from the Right of Squadrons."

"Advance by Fours from the Right."

March."

On the word "March," the Squadron Leaders having placed themselves in front of their Pivots, and having given "Left wheel," "Forward," each Squadron advances in Columns of Fours, through the intervals made for it by the Line in its front; when the Line is to be formed again, the Commanding Officer gives the word "Front Form," (which is repeated by Squadron Leaders,) and each Squadron forms on its leading Fours, and continues to advance by the Squadron of Direction, unless ordered to halt.

1. A moving Base is given for the heads of Squadrons by the Leader of the Squadron of Direction and the Regimental Marker, who rides about twenty yards from him.
2. Either flank may be thrown forward during the advance by an alteration in the direction of the Base.

3. This and the following Movement are applicable to the passage over broken ground, as well as to the passage of Lines, whether of Cavalry or Infantry.

4. When the Cavalry are about to advance through a line of Infantry, notice should be sent to the Officer who commands it, that openings may be ordered without confusion.

---

Movement No. XXI. from Line.

**Passage of Lines to the Rear.**

Commanding Officer, repeated \{ "Retire by Fours from the Right of Squadrons."

Squadron Leaders, " Retire by f ours from the Right."

Commanding Officer, repeated \} *March.*
On the word "March," Squadron Leaders having placed themselves in front of their pivots, give the words "Right Wheel, Forward," and each Squadron retires in Column of Fours. The intervals from each other are preserved from the Second Squadron, and during the march of the Columns, a moving Base is given by the Leader of the Second Squadron and the Adjutant. When the Columns approach within fifty yards of the place where the Commanding Officer intends to reform his line, the Major, or Officer appointed, rides forward, and places a fixed Base for the purpose, consisting of the Adjutant and Regimental Marker, where the right of the First Squadron is to stand. Each Squadron Leader then conducts his Squadron to its own left point, gives the words "Left Wheel Forward," moves on with his Squadron, and taking his post in front of the centre, gives the words "Fours Left, Halt, Dress," when he sees the head of his Squadron arriving at its place.

Observation. This Movement must not be used for retiring through Infantry, unless when in Squares.

Section XII.

ON THE QUARTER DISTANCE AND CLOSE COLUMNS.

1. The general objects of a Quarter Distance Column are, to form Line to the front in the quickest manner, to conceal numbers from the knowledge of the Enemy, and to extend in whatever direction the circumstances of the moment may require. It is a situation for the Assembly rather than for the Movement of Cavalry, and is more applicable to Reserves than to the general purposes of Field Movement. The Formation from Quarter Distance Column into Line should, if possible, be made at such a distance as not to fear interruption from the Enemy.

The Quarter Distance Column is composed of Squadrons, except in the case of its being required to assemble in very confined situations, where it may be more desirable to form a Close Column of Troops, on which occasion, the Leaders of Troops must move out to the pivot, and the Serrefiles to the reverse flank; but when it is moved into open ground to deploy, the Column of Squadrons will be formed, and closed to its front, before the deployment take place.
2. The Quarter Distance Column dresses to the pivot flank, both when halted and in movement; except when a Formation is ordered to the reverse flank. After wheeling by Fours to take ground to a flank, or for the purpose of deployment, the dressing and preservation of distances are to what was the Front of the Column.

3. When the Quarter Distance Column is to take ground to a flank, the Caution is given, "Take ground to the Right or Left," repeated by Squadron Leaders, on which the Fours are wheeled to the hand ordered, and the whole move on the word "March," Dressing and Distance being preserved from the Squadron at the head of the Column.

4. The Quarter Distance Column can change its direction on a Moveable Pivot by the command "Right (or Left) Shoulders," followed by "Forward."

5. Should it be required to deploy into an Oblique Line, a previous command is given, "Squadrons Quarter Right," repeated by Squadron Leaders, upon which each Squadron wheels, as it stands in Column, upon its own right flank man, so that the Column is thrown into an Oblique Échelon. The Deployment, on any named Squadron, then proceeds in the usual way.

6. Deployments on the front or rear Squadron should often be practised from the Quarter Distance Column in march to its flank, because when forming line with others, every Regiment, except the one on which the Deployment is made, necessarily deploys on the march.

7. The Deployment on the front Squadron should also be much practised from Quarter Distance Column in march to the front; it is by this method that a Regiment or parts of the Line would re-form after doubling back into Column. On such occasions, the Deployment must be made at double the rate at which the leading Squadron is moving.

8. When from Quarter Distance Column it is required to advance in Column of Troops, the Right Troop of the First Squadron receives from its Leader, on the Caution, the words "Right Troop, Advance." On the word "March," the Right Troop advances, and the Left Troop receives from its Leader the words "Left Troop, Right Incline, March," followed by "Forward," when it covers the preceding Troop in Column. The remaining Squadrons break into Column of Troops in the same manner, when it comes to their turn.

9. Should the Quarter Distance Column be required to pass over deep or broken ground at a rapid pace, it is advisable to "Take half distance."
10. The Close Column of Squadrons will be used when it is necessary to form Troops in a small space, but it must not be adopted in the general evolutions of a Brigade or Division.

11. Deployments may be made on the Leading Squadron.

The word of Command will be "The Regiment will deploy—Squadrons to the Right—Squadrons to the Left."

The Base (Leading) Squadron dresses up to the Markers, those next to the Base moving to the Right, those in rear to the Left.

---

MOVEMENTS FROM QUARTER DISTANCE COLUMN.

Movement No. I. from Quarter Distance Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated "Deploy on the First Squadron."

Leaders of the other Squadrons, "Fours Left."

Commanding Officer, "March."

On the word "March," the Leader of the First Squadron dresses it up to the Markers, and the other Squadrons lead out to the left. As soon as the former is opposite its place in line, it receives from its Leader the words, "Second Squadron, Fours, Right, Forward," and when on a line with the rear rank of the First Squadron, "Halt, Dress up."

In like manner, when the Third and Fourth Squadrons arrive opposite their places, they receive the words "Third or Fourth Squadrons, Fours Right, Forward," and when on a line with the rear rank of the Second Squadron, "Halt, Dress up."

* On the caution to deploy, the Base is given by the two Regimental Markers, who are placed four horses' lengths in advance of the head of the Column.
Movement No. II. from Quarter Distance Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated \( \text{"Deploy on the Fourth by Squadron Leaders,}\) \( \text{"Squadron."} \)*
Leaders of the other Squadrons, \( \text{"Fours Right."} \)
Commanding Officer, \( \text{"March."} \)

On the word \( \text{"March,"} \) the First and Second and Third Squadrons lead out to the right; the latter, when opposite its place in the line, receives from its Leader the words, \( \text{"Third Squadron, Fours, Left,"} \) followed by \( \text{"Forward,"} \) as soon as its front is clear, and when on a line with the rear rank of the Fourth Squadron, \( \text{"Halt, Dress up."} \) The Second and First Squadrons, when opposite their places in the line, receive the same words of command from their Leaders, and form in Line in the same manner.

The Fourth Squadron, the moment its front is clear, receives from its Leader the word \( \text{"Fourth Squadron, March,"} \) and when it has removed up to the Markers, \( \text{"Halt, Dress."} \)

**Central Deployment.**

The Deployment upon the Second Squadron is equally necessary as upon the Head or Rear, and should be as often practised.

The First Squadron wheels \( \text{"Fours Right,"} \) and proceeds as in Deployment upon the Rear Squadron; the Third and Fourth wheel \( \text{"Fours Left,"} \) and proceed as in Deployment upon the Head Squadron; while the Second, as soon as its

* On the caution to deploy, the Base is given by the two Regimental Markers, who are placed four horses' lengths in advance of the head of the Column.
front is clear, moves up to the Base marked for it upon the Alignment.*

**Oblique Deployment.**

Should it be required to deploy into an Oblique Line, the previous command will be given "**Squadrons, Quarter Right,**" or "**Quarter Left,**" repeated by Squadron Leaders, upon which each Squadron wheels the degree ordered, so that the Column stands in Oblique Echelon, the head Squadron being thus placed on the intended Alignment.* The deployment then

* On the caution to deploy, the Base is given by the two Regimental Markers, who are posted four horses' lengths in advance of the head of the Column.
proceeds in the usual way. If, on a Rear or Central Squadron, the Base must, of course, be placed at the points where the flanks of that Squadron will arrive when it shall have moved up to the Alignment, without regard to the flanks of the Head Squadron. Officers turn their own horses upon the Caution, in the same direction as the Squadron to which they respectively belong will march, when the Deployment begins.

Movement No. III. from Quarter Distance Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated \[ \text{"Form Line to the Left on the Fourth Squadron."} \]
Leader of the Fourth Squadron, \[ \text{"Fourth Squadron, Left Wheel."} \]
Leaders of the other Squadrons, \[ \text{"Advance."} \]
Commanding Officer, \[ \text{"March."} \]

On the word "March," the First and Second and Third Squadrons advance; each, as soon as it has got proper distance, receiving from its Leader the word "Left Wheel," followed by "Forward," and "Halt, Dress up," as it comes up to the line of the Fourth Squadron, each Leader being on the left flank of the Column to halt his Squadron.

The Fourth Squadron wheels to the left, as soon as it gets room, and receives from its Leader the word "Forward," followed by "Halt, Dress," when it is moved up four horses' lengths.

Should the Quarter Distance Column be required to form line to the right (reverse) flank, the caution is, "Line to the Right on the Fourth Squadron." The movement and commands are the same, only substituting "Right" for "Left," the Squadrons are then re-numbered off.

Observations. To form the Line on the First Squadron, the Second and Third and

* On the caution, the Base is given by the Left Troop Leader and marker of the Fourth Squadron.
Fourth are put about by Fours, moved to the rear till they have got their proper distances, and then halted, fronted, and wheeled into line. To form the Line on the Second Squadron, the Third and Fourth are put about and moved back, and the First moved forward, on the same principle.

Movement No. IV. from Quarter Distance Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,
Leader of the First Squadron,
Leaders of the other Squadrons,
Commanding Officer; "March."

"Change Front to the Right."
"First Squadron, Right Wheel."
"Fours Left."

On the word "March," the First Squadron wheels to the right, and receives from its Leader the word "Halt, Dress." The Leaders of the other Squadrons conduct them, circling, into the new direction. They front them by fours right in succession as they cover, and moving them up by the word "Forward," give the word "Halt, Dress," as each gains its proper distance from the Front.

* On the caution, the Base for the covering of the Pivots is given by the two Regimental Markers.
Movement No. V. from Quarter Distance Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated } "The Column will reverse by Squadron Leaders, its Front."*
Leaders of Right Troops, "Right Troop, Fours about."
Commanding Officer, "March."

On the word "March," both Columns of Troops advance four horses' lengths; the Commanding Officer then gives the words "Leading Troops, Right about Wheel," and "Forward," when the wheel is completed; the rest follow, and wheel on the same ground, receiving the words from their Troop Leaders, until the Right and Left Troops of the Column have completely changed places (fig. 1). The Commanding Officer then gives the words "Halt, Front, Dress," on which the whole halt, and the Right Troops front (fig. 2). Squadron Leaders dress their Squadrons from the pivot flanks, and then resume their usual posts.

It is a rule for the Reverse Troops always to go about by Fours in this Movement, whether the Right or Left be in front, and they will be led by their pivot flanks.

Observation. When left in front the fours are put "Left About."

* On the caution, the Base for the covering of the Pivots is given by the two Regimental Markers.
Movement No. VI. from Quarter Distance Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated \( \text{"The Squadrons will Countermarch."} \)

by Squadron Leaders, \( \text{"Fours Right and Left."} \)

Squadron Leaders, \( \text{"March."} \)

Commanding Officer, \( \text{"March."} \)

On the word \( \text{"March."} \) the leading Four of each rank advancing half a horse's length, wheels "right about" on its right hand man, the rest following and wheeling at the same point, till the front and rear ranks have, within half a horse's length, changed places (fig. 1). The Squadron Leaders, remaining on the pivot flank, give the words \( \text{"Halt, Front, Dress"} \) (fig. 2); and having dressed the ranks, resume their places.

During the Countermarch, the Troop Leaders move on the flank of their leading Fours of the front rank.

Whether the Column be right or left in front, it is to be a rule, that the front rank always goes Fours Right, and the rear rank Fours Left.

* On the caution, the Base for the covering of the Pivot is given by the two Regimental Markers.
Section XIII.

ON THE OPEN COLUMN.

1. Movements of the open Column to the front, rear, and flanks, are of the utmost importance, and, as they precede many Formations into Line, the greatest attention should be paid to their exactness. The Open Column is called "Column of Route," when applied to common Marches. It is named the "Column of Manoeuvre," when applied to the execution of Field Movements, and the greatest precision is then required, in order to ensure at any moment a correct Formation into Line. The Column will be formed with the left in front, whenever it is probable that the Formation of the Line will be required to the right flank, and right in front, when required to the left.

2. The Open Column of Troops is to be considered the established Column of Manoeuvre; this arrangement, however, is not to be considered absolute with regard to Squadrons of more than Forty-eight Files, when the Open Column of Divisions may be substituted for that of Troops.

3. It is a general rule, that, in all Formations of Line from Column by the Oblique Echelon, the Troops must rather over-wheel at the commencement of the Movement; those next the Base making nearly a full wheel.

4. In the following Movements from Column, no Formations of Line oblique to the direction of the Column have been laid down, it being considered the safest for the Column previously to form Line in the prolongation of its front, or either of its flanks; having done this, it is easy for the Line immediately to make such a change of Front as may place it in the required situation. Yet Oblique Formations may be executed at once from Open Column, by wheeling the Base Troop into the intended direction of the Line, and causing the rest to form upon it by the echelon march. To perform an Oblique Formation in this way, the placing of the Base Troop must be superintended by the Commanding Officer himself, and the other Troops must be wheeled so as to bring their inward flanks perpendicular to their places in the new Line, in the manner prescribed,—they will thus be somewhat over-wheeled, or somewhat under-wheeled, when they approach the Line, according to its obliquity. In order, therefore, that the Squadron and Troop Leaders may know whether to over-wheel or under-wheel, the Commanding Officer must add to the ordinary caution the word "Right Forward," or "Right Back," or "Left Forward," or
"Left Back." For example, an Open Column, right in front, is required to form Line on the leading Troop, with the left rather thrown forward, the caution is to be given "Form Line to the Front," but then must be added, "Left Forward." This addition conveys to the Leader of the First Squadron the direction in which he is to place the Base, subject to the Commanding Officer's superintendence; and also to the Troop Leaders, that they are to allow their Troops rather to over-wheel on approaching the Line, before they give the word "Forward." But, if the caution expresses that the flank is to be kept back, then they must somewhat under-wheel, by giving the word "Forward" rather sooner than in the case of direct formation.

Form Line to the Front, Left Forward.
Form Line to the Front, Left Back.
Form Line to the Rear, Right Forward.
Form Line to the Front on Second Squadron, Right Forward.

5. When the Column is to take ground to its flank, the caution is given, "Take Ground to the Right (or Left)," repeated by Squadron Leaders, on which the Fours are wheeled, and the Troop Leaders place themselves in front of the pivot flank of their leading Fours. During the movement, they preserve their Dressing and Distances from the head of the Column, from whence a Base is given by the Adjutant and the Leader of the Troop at the head of the Column.

6. The Head of a Column can change direction on a Moveable Pivot by the commands, "Head of the Column," "Left Shoulders," followed by "Forward;" or when a precise degree of change is intended, the words may be given, "Head of the Column," "Quarter Right," or "Half Right," or "Right Wheel," followed by "Forward."
7. The Column can change front, to the extent of the quarter-circle on the head Troop of the Leading Squadron; that Troop being placed in the required direction, all the other Troops wheel by Fours to the pivot or reverse flank, and proceed to form in Column in the new direction. This Movement, of changing front on the head Troop of a Column, may be required when taking up ground with other Regiments. The head of the Column being led to where it is to stand, and the leading Troop wheeled into the intended direction, the caution is given, "Enter the new Direction to the Right (or Left)," repeated by Squadron Leaders, and the whole, by flank marching, form in rear of the leading Troop.

8. The Column can retire either by "Fours about," or by the Troops or Divisions "Wheeling about," or "Counter-marching."

9. Double Column Movements are very useful for taking up Oblique Positions; for the passage of Defiles of a sufficient width, where no impediment is likely to occur in the subsequent Formation of the Line; and for the passing of Regiments to the front of considerable bodies on a plain, in cases where the rapidity attained by Central Formations is of importance; but where obstacles and narrow passes are to be expected, the Single Column is less liable to confusion, and is, therefore, better adapted for general circumstances. For the Formation and Movements of Supports and Reserves in Brigade, Double Columns are both safe and convenient.
MOVEMENTS FROM OPEN COLUMN.

Movement No. 1: from Open Column,

Commanding Officer, repeated "Left Wheel into Line."
by Squadron Leaders, "March."

On the caution, the Leaders of the Second, Third, and Fourth Squadrons face the pivot line, at the point where the centres of their Squadron will rest, dressing upon the Base.

On the word "March," the Troops wheel left into line, receiving the word "Halt, Dress," from the Squadron Leaders, as they complete the wheel. The Troop Leaders, during the wheel, will place themselves in the line of dressing, fronting the centres of their Troops. At the completion of the wheel, the word is given "Eyes Front," repeated by Squadron Leaders, upon which the Officers and Markers resume their places.

Oss. 1. When a Column of Divisions wheels into line, the Base is given in like manner; the Troop Leaders placing themselves in the line of dressing, opposite the pivot file of their Leading Divisions.

Oss. 2. Wheeling into Line without halting, is a most necessary practice for Service. The Caution is the same as when halted, and is repeated by Squadron Leaders. At the completion of the wheels, Squadron Leaders give the word "Forward," and the Line advances at the former pace. All the Officers take their dressing from the Squadron of Direction. No Markers are employed, nor do Troop Leaders front their Troops during the wheel.

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader and Marker of the Right Wing.
Movement No. II. from Open Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,
Leader of the Base Troop,
Leader of the Troop next the Base,
Leaders of other Squadrons,
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

- "Form Line to the Front."
- "Right Troop, Advance."
- "Left Troop, Half Left."
- "Troops, Half Left."
- "March."

On the word "March," the Base Troop advances four horses' lengths, and then receives the word "Halt, Dress," from its Leader.

The other Troops wheel half-left, and then receiving from Squadron Leaders, and the Leader of the Troop next the Base, the word "Forward," advance in Echelon towards their point in the Line. Each, as it approaches the line, receives from its Leader the word "Right," followed by "Forward;" and, on arriving on a line with the rear rank of the preceding Troop, "Halt, Dress up."

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader of the First Squadron and Marker of the Right Wing.
Movement No. III. from Open Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,
Leader of the Troop next the Base, "Right Troop, Half Left."
Leaders of the First and Second and Third Squadrons,
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

On the word "March," the whole, except the Base Troop (which stands fast), move as follows:

The Troops wheel half-left, and receiving the words "Halt," "Fours about," followed by "Forward," from Squadron Leaders and the Leader of the Troop next the Base, retire in Echelon towards their places in the Line. Each on approaching the Line receives from its Leader the word "Right," followed by "Forward," and, when it has passed the Line one horse's length, "Halt, Front, Dress up."

Observations. In doing this manœuvre Left in Front the Fours should be put Left About.

* The Base is given by the Left Troop Leader of the Fourth Squadron and Marker of the Left Wing.
Movement No. IV. from Open Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders; "Form Line to the Front on the Second Squadron."
Leader of the Base Troop, "Right Troop, Advance."
Leader of the Troop in rear of the Base, "Left Troop, Half Left."
Leaders of First, Third, and Fourth Squadrons, "Troops, Half Left."
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, "March."

On the word "March," the Base Troop advances four horses' lengths, and then receives the word "Halt, Dress," from its Leader.

The other Troops wheel half-left, those in front of the Base going "Fours about" as soon as the wheel is completed; and the formation then proceeds as in Movements Nos. II. and III.

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader of the Second Squadron and Marker of the Right Wing.
**Observations.** In doing this manoeuvre Left in Front the Fours should be put Left About.

---

**Movement No. V. from Open Column.**

Commanding Officer, repeated  
*Form Line to the Rear on the Leading Troop.*

Leader of the Base Troop,  
*Right Troop, Left about Wheel.*

Leader of the Troop in rear of the Base,  
*Fours Right.*

Leaders of Second, Third, and Fourth Squadrons,  
*Fours Right.*

Commanding Officer, repeated  
*March.*

---

*The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader of the First Squadron and Marker of the Right Wing.*
On the word "March," the Base Troop wheels Left about, and receives the word "Halt, Dress," from its Leader.

The other Troops, having received the words "Half Left, Forward," are conducted by their Leaders (on the left flank of the leading Fours) to the points where their left Flanks will stand in the new line, that for the inward Troop being marked by the Squadron Leader.

As each Troop successively arrives at its Marker, the Leader (without himself going round him) gives the words, "Left Wheel, Forward," and then taking his post in front of the centre, "Fours Left, Halt, Dress," when the head of his Troop arrives at its place.

Observations.

1. Whenever this, and similar, Formations are executed from Column of Divisions, the head of the Rear Division of each Troop must, after the Fours have been wheeled and put in motion, unite with the rear of the leading one, so that the Troops may be entire when they enter the new Line.

2. Should the Right Rear of the Column be threatened, the most secure mode of making this Formation will be as follows: "Form Line to the Right about on the Leading Troop," which immediately wheels to the right about, and moves up four horses’ lengths; each Troop in succession wheels to the right, and passes by the rear of the Troop last formed, wheels again to the right, and forms as prescribed in Movement No. X.

This Formation will be found convenient after retiring in Column round a flank of Infantry, or of another line of Cavalry.
Movement No. VI. from Open Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,
Leader of the Base Troop, "Left Troop, Left about Wheel."
Leader of Troop next the Base,
Leaders of First, Second, and Third Squadrons,
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

"Form Line to the Rear on the Rear Troop."
"Right Troop, Three Quarters Left about."
"Troops Three Quarters Left about."
"March."

On the word "March," the Base Troop wheels "Left about," receives from its Leader the word "Forward," and advancing four horses' lengths, "Halt, Dress." The other Troops wheel three-quarters left about, and, receiving the word "Forward," from Squadron Leaders, and Leader of the Troop next the Base, advance in Echelon towards their places in the Line.

Each, on approaching the Line, receives from its Leader the word "Left," followed by "Forward;" and, on arriving on a line with the rear rank of the preceding Troop, "Halt, Dress up."

* The Base is given by the Left Troop Leader of the Fourth Squadron and Marker of the Left Wing.
Movement No. VII. from Open Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,
Leader of the Base Troop, "Left Troop, Left about Wheel."
Leader of the Troop before the Base,
Leaders of First and Second Squadrons,
Leader of Fourth Squadron, "Fours Right."
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

"Form Line to the Rear on the Third Squadron."*
"Right Troop, Three Quarters Left about."
"Troops, Three Quarters Left about."
"March."

On the word "March," the Base Troop wheels left about, receives from its Leader the word "Forward," and advancing four horses' lengths, "Halt Dress." The Troops before the Base wheel three-quarters left about, and form as prescribed in Movement No. VI. The Troops in rear of the Base move off together, and form as laid down in Movement No. V.

* The Base is given by the Left Troop Leader of the Third Squadron and Marker of the Left Wing.
Movement No. VIII. from Open Column.

A Column having changed its direction to the reverse (right) hand, forms line to its former front, as follows:—

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, \(\text{"Form Line to the Left on the new Alignment."}^*\)

Leaders of the First and Second Squadrons, \(\text{"Left Wheel into Line."}\)

Leader of the Right Troop of the Third Squadron, \(\text{"Right Troop, Advance."}\)

Leader of the Left Troop of the Third Squadron, \(\text{"Left Troop, Half Left."}\)

Leader of the Fourth Squadron, \(\text{"Troops, Half Left."}\)

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, \(\text{"March."}\)

On the word "March," the Troops of the First and Second Squadrons, wheeling left into Line, receive the word "Halt, Dress," from Squadron Leaders. The Right Troop of the Third Squadron advances, till on a line with the rear rank of the Second Squadron, and then receives from its Leader, the word "Halt, Dress up." The Left Troop of the Third Squadron, and the Fourth Squadron, wheeling half-left, receive from their Leaders the word "Forward," then, on approaching the Line, "Right," followed by "Forward," and, when they arrive on a line with the rear rank of the preceding Troop, "Halt, Dress up."

Should the new Line be oblique to the old one, instead of at right angles with it, the degree of wheel for the rear of the Column will depend on the change of direction its head has made. In this case the leading Troop of that part of the Column which is yet in the old direction will be placed on the new Alignment, according to the degree of its obliquity.

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader of the First Squadron and Marker of the Right Wing.
Movement No. IX. from Open Column.

A Column having changed its direction to the pivot (left) hand, forms line to its former rear, as follows:

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,
Leaders of the First and Second Squadrons,
Leaders of the Third and Fourth Squadrons,
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

"Form Line to the Left on the new Alignment."
"Left Wheel into Line."
"Fours Right."
"March."

On the word "March," the Troops of the First and Second Squadrons wheel into Line, as detailed in Movement No. I.

The Troops of the Third and Fourth Squadrons move off together, and form as detailed in Movement No. V. from Open Column.

Observations. The change of direction of a Column, followed by this or the preceding Movement, is a convenient method for forming a Regiment across the Road on which it was marching, for covering the entrance or issue of a Defile, after having passed through it, or for entering an Alignment at a central point, when manoeuvring with other Regiments.

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader of the First Squadron and Marker of the Right Wing.
Movement No. X. from Open Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,
Leader of the Base Troop,
Leader of the Troop next the Base,
Leaders of First, Second, and Third Squadrons,
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

"To the Reverse Flank Right form Line."*
"Right Troop, Right Wheel."
"Left Troop, Advance."
"Advance."
"March."

On the word "March," the Leading Troop wheels to the right, receives the word "Forward" from its Leader, and, when it has advanced four horses' lengths, "Halt, Dress."

The other Troops pass along the rear of the leading Troop; each in succession, as soon as its flank comes opposite its place in the Line, receives from its Leader the words "Right Wheel—Forward;" and, when on a line with the rear rank of the preceding Troop, "Halt, Dress up."

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader of the First Squadron and Marker of the Right Wing.
Movement No. XI. from Open Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated \{ \textit{Form Line to the Right,} on by Squadron Leaders, \textit{the Heads of Squadrons.} \} * Leaders of Right Troops, \textit{Right Troop, Right Wheel.} Leaders of Left Troops, \textit{Left Troop, Advance.} Commanding Officer, repeated \} \textit{March.} \} by Squadron Leaders,

On the word \textit{March.} the Right Troops wheel to the right, receive from their Leaders the word \textit{Forward,} and then, advancing four horses' lengths, \textit{Halt, Dress.}

The Left Troops pass along the rear of the Right Troops of their own Squadrons; when clear of their left flanks receive the word \textit{Right Wheel,} followed by \textit{Forward;} and, when on a line with the rear rank of the other Troops, \textit{Halt, Dress up.} The Squadrons are then re-numbered off.

N.B.—The larger figures in this plate denote the position of the Squadrons when re-numbered off.

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader of the Fourth Squadron and Marker of the Left Wing.
Movement No. XII. from Open Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,
Leader of the Base Troop,
Leader of the Left Troop of the First Squadron,
Leaders of Right Troops of the other Squadrons,
Leaders of Left Troops of do.,
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

```
Form Line to the Front on the Right of the Leading Squadron."
"Right Troop, Advance."
"Left Troop, Half Left."
"Right Troop, Right Wheel."
"Left Troop, Advance."
"March."
```

N.B.—The larger figures in this plate denote the position of the Squadrons when re-numbered off.

* The Base is given by the Right Troop Leader of the First Squadron and the Marker of the Right Wing, placed opposite its right flank.
On the word "March," the Leading Troop of the First Squadron advances four horses' lengths, and then receives the word "Halt, Dress," from its Leader. The Left Troop of that Squadron forms on the Right Troop, as in Movement No. II.

The Right Troops of the other Squadrons wheel to the right, and receive from their Leaders the word "Forward:" their Left Troops advance, and wheeling at the same point, follow in column, and when the left flank of the latter has nearly gained the Squadron Interval, the Squadron Leader gives the word "Left Wheel into Line," and "Forward," at the completion of the wheel. Each Squadron is then led by its centre, and, on coming into line with the rear rank of the Base Squadron, receives the word "Halt, Dress up."

The Squadrons are then re-numbered off.

Observations. The object of this Movement is to enable an Open Column, arriving, with its right in front, at a place where there is want of space or broken ground upon its left, to form line instantly to the front, without the delay of changing the direction of the head of the Column to the right, and then marching with the flank exposed to the enemy, before wheeling into line.

But where there is more than one Regiment, it is best not to carry this Formation further than the first Regiment, the others leading out to the Right in Regimental Columns, and wheeling into line and moving up successively.
Movement No. XIII. from Open Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leader,
Leader of the First Squadron,
Leaders of other Squadrons,
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

"Form Line to the Left on the Right of the First Squadron,"*  
"First Squadron, Left Wheel into Line."
"Advance."
"March."

On the word "March," the First Squadron wheels Left into Line, receives the word "Forward" from its Leader, and after advancing four horses' lengths, "Halt, Dress."

The other Squadrons pass successively along the rear of the First; each, as soon as it has got its proper interval from the right flank of that which preceded it, receives from its Leader, the words "Left Wheel into Line, Forward;" and, when on a line with the rear rank of the last-formed Squadron, "Halt, Dress up."

The Squadrons are then re-numbered off.

Observations. The object of this Movement is to show an immediate and successively increasing Front to the pivot flank, in less time than it could be done by moving the whole Column forward, and wheeling it into Line in its natural order. This Movement should, therefore, be considered one of necessity, not of convenience, and should be had recourse to, as the readiest means of formation, under the circumstances of the moment. When the Column is considerable (as in Brigade), it will be better to effect this movement by Regiments instead of by Squadrons, each Regiment wheeling into line in succession.

N.B.—The larger figures in this Plate denote the positions of the Squadrons when re-numbered off.

* The Base is given by the Left Troop Leader of the First Squadron and Marker of Right Wing.
Movement No. XIV. from Open Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders, Leader of the Rear Troop, Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

"Rear of the Column to the Front."
"Fours Right."
"March."

On the word "March," the Rear Troop moves out to the right, and as soon as it is clear of the Column, receives the words "Fours Left, Forward," from its Leader, and then advances.

The others follow in succession, each Leader giving the word "Fours Right," followed by "March," as soon as the advance of the preceding Troop enables him to pass close behind it, and then "Fours Left, Forward," when he covers in Column.

Each Troop must make its Flank and forward March at an increased pace, in order to ensure a correct preservation of distances.

Observations. The Troops may be wheeled "Fours Left," and led out to the pivot flank, if circumstances render it necessary; but the word "By the pivot flank," must in such case be added to the Caution.
Movement No. XV. from Open Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,
Leaders of Right Troops,
Leaders of Left Troops of each Squadron,
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

"Form Quarter Distance Column."
"Right Troop, Advance."
"Left Troop, Left Incline."
"March."

On the word "March" the Leading Troop advances four horses' lengths, and receives from its leader the word "Halt, Dress."

The other Right Troops move straight forward. The Left Troops incline to their left at double the pace, till their right flanks are uncovered; they then receive the word "Forward" from their Leaders, followed by "Halt, Dress up," from the Leader of the Left Troop of the First Squadron, and "Walk," from the other Leaders of Left Troops as they come into Line with their Right Troops.

Each Squadron, as soon as formed, receives the word "Eyes Left," from its Leader, and, when moved up to its proper distance in Quarter-distance Column, "Halt, Dress."
Movement No. XVI. from Double Column.

Commanding Officer repeated by Squadron Leaders, Leader of the Left Troop of the Second Squadron, Leader of the Right Troop of the Third Squadron, Leader of the Right Troop of the Second Squadron, Leader of the Left Troop of the Third Squadron, Leader of the First Squadron, Leader of the Second Squadron,

\[ "Form Line to the Front." *\]
\[ "Left Troop, Advance." \]
\[ "Right Troop, Advance." \]
\[ "Right Troop, Half Right." \]
\[ "Left Troop, Half Left." \]
\[ "Troops, Half Right." \]
\[ "Troops, Half Left." \]

On the word "March" the leading Troops advance four horses' lengths and receive, from their Leaders, the word "Halt, Dress."

The Troops of the Right Column wheel half right and those of the Left Column half left, and the line is formed as prescribed in No. II. from Open Column.

* The Base is given by the Troop Leaders of the Leading Troops.
Movement No. XVII. from Double Column.

Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,
Leaders of the First and Second Squadrons,
Commanding Officer, repeated by Squadron Leaders,

"Form Line to the Right."*
"Right Wheel into Line."
"March."

On the word "March," the Troops of the Right Column wheel right into line, and are halted and dressed by Squadron Leaders.

The Troops of the Left Column pass along the rear of the formed Line, and form as prescribed in Movement No. X.

* The Base is given by the Left Troop Leader of the Second Squadron and Marker of Right Wing.
Section XIV.

SKIRMISHING.

Cavalry Skirmishers are usually employed with the following objects, viz.:

1. To cover an advance or retreat, to prevent surprises, and to give warning of the presence or approach of an enemy. To explore the ground that will be passed over previous to an advance.

2. When Armies are in actual presence of each other but not engaged, to hinder reconnaissances on the part of the enemy, to mask manoeuvres that may be taking place in their rear, and to report all the movements of the enemy.

It is evident that although general rules may be laid down for the purpose of carrying out these objects, the effective action of Skirmishers must mainly depend upon the intelligence of the officers and men employed, who should act as circumstances dictate rather than adhere strictly to the rules laid down.

Skirmishers should be especially taught to take every advantage of ground. During an advance or retreat they should preserve a general alignment in order to prevent confusion, but they should always halt near the summit of any rising ground in such a position as to see to their front without being themselves exposed.

They should carefully examine all thickets, gullies, villages, or anything that can conceal an enemy.

They should not open fire unnecessarily, but should be employed rather to watch than to engage an opposing force.

When covering an advance or retreat they must regulate their movements by the line of march of the main body; but when in actual presence of an enemy they will not conform to all the Movements that may be proceeding in their rear unless specially ordered, but will rather act according to the movements of the enemy.

When covering a force of not more than a Regiment, Skirmishers may be employed without supports; but when acting in front of a Brigade, Division, or Corps d'armée, supports will invariably be sent out.

Skirmishers must be careful never to hamper the effective action of any part of the main body which they are covering,
and when called in they will as quickly as possible uncover its front, and select the best points of entry through the line.

No positive rule can be laid down as to the distance of Skirmishers from their supports, and supports from the main body; as this must evidently depend upon the nature of the ground. On level plains there should not be less than 400 yards between each.

The interval between Skirmishers must also depend upon the extent of ground to be covered, but 20 yards will be the interval under ordinary circumstances.

Skirmishers when ordered to extend will go out at a gallop with drawn swords, looking to their own troop leaders for the general direction. After extending, if more than one Troop is employed, they will look to the leader of the Skirmishers for pace, alignment, &c.

If a Regiment is skirmishing the Squadron Leader of the Second Squadron, under the directions of the Field Officer commanding, who will take his post in rear of the centre, will be the leader of the Skirmishers.

If a Wing, the Squadron Leader of the Right Squadron of that Wing.

If a Squadron, the Leader of that Squadron.

If a Troop, the Leader of that Troop.

The post of the Leader of the Skirmishers will be as near the centre of the line of Skirmishers as possible. During an advance he will be abreast of the centre man. When halted a few horses' lengths in rear.

The second Leader of direction of a line of Skirmishers will be an Officer or Non-Commissioned Officer told off for that purpose by the Leader of the Skirmishers.

His post will be near the Leader of the Skirmishers, to whom he will give general assistance, and it will be his duty to lead the retiring line to the rear when retreating.

Different Occasions of Skirmishing as a Regiment.

On the Command the Regiment will skirmish with 400 yards interval (or such interval as may be required by the extent of ground to be occupied); the Squadron Leaders will repeat the caution and give the additional commands to their respective Squadrons, if of the Right Wing, "Advance in Column of Troops from the Right," and if of the Left Wing, "Advance in Column of Troops from the Left." When the Commanding Officer's trumpet sounds the pace and march.
they will move off accordingly. As soon as the Squadrons have thus formed Squadron Columns of Troops, the Second and Third Squadrons will receive the word of command, "Fours Half Right," and "Fours Half Left," and the First and Fourth Squadrons "Troops Half Right" and "Troops Half Left," and at the same time the Flank Squadrons will increase their pace. Directly the Squadron Leaders of the Second and Third Squadrons see that they have obtained their proper interval from each other they will receive the command "Forward." The First and Fourth Squadrons continue to move "Half Right" and "Half Left" until they have obtained their proper intervals, when they will receive the command "Troops Half Left" and "Troops Half Right" from their Squadron Leaders, and immediately reduce their pace and take up their Alignment on the Second or Squadron of Direction.

If the Commanding Officer's trumpet sounds, "Skirmishers Out," the leading troops of each Squadron will skirmish, the rear troops remaining in supports.

When the trumpet sounds "Skirmishers in" the Regiment will rally in rear of the general Line, and as a rule upon the Second Squadron, which will take up an advantageous position for the purpose.

As a Squadron.

The command will be given "The Right Troop will Skirmish, Left Support." The Skirmishers will go out as hereafter indicated and the Support will move out at a reduced pace and form in rear of the centre of the Skirmishers.

Skirmishers Out.

When the trumpet sounds "Skirmishers Out" the Leader or Leaders of the Troops ordered to skirmish will gallop at a steady pace to the points where the centre of their troops will rest when extended. The Left centre file of the troop follows its leader, the remainder extend from the centre. The whole will look to the Leader of the Skirmishers when extended, who will give the word "Halt," when the line of skirmishers has advanced sufficiently.

In extending each rear rank man will be on the left of his front rank man.

Directly the general alignment has been taken up each man will return his sword, draw his carbine, and load.
If the line of Skirmishers is not under fire each man will turn his horse half right and remain steady, keeping a sharp look out to his front, and occasionally glancing his eyes right and left to observe the movements of the Skirmishers on each flank. If under fire he will circle or passage his horse occasionally so as not to show a fixed object for the enemy's aim.

Commence Firing.

On this trumpet sound each front rank man will fire and then quickly load, when loaded he will give the word "Ready" to his rear rank man on his left, who will act in a similar manner, they must thus never be both unloaded at the same time. The men should be taught to level low and aim deliberately.

Cease Firing.

On this sound the whole line of Skirmishers will unload and return the ammunition into the pouches.

Advance.

On the trumpet sounding the "Advance" the whole line of Skirmishers will move steadily to the front, looking to the leader of the Skirmishers for pace, alignment, &c.

The Leader and his Second Leader will raise their swords and riding abreast thus give the general alignment.

Retire.

On this sound the whole of the front rank men turn about to the right and proceed straight to the rear, led by the Second Leader, who will raise his sword, and after having proceeded about 60 yards to 80 yards, according to the pace of retirement, will give the command "Front," at the same time waving his sword as a signal to the flanks; the men of the retiring line will then turn left about and halt. Each man will now have a double interval. The moment this line has halted the Second Leader will give the word "Ready," upon which the Leader of the Skirmishers will give the command "About" to the rank of Skirmishers nearest to the enemy, at the same time waving his sword as a signal to the flanks; the whole front line will then go about to the right and be led through the halted line, bridle hand to bridle hand. The
Leader of the Skirmishers will always remain with the halted line nearest to the enemy, and the Second Leader will take the retiring line to the rear.

In retiring firing each rank should fire immediately before going to the rear, and load the moment it halts after fronting. Should the Halt sound when the line of Skirmishers nearest to the enemy is halted, it will remain steady, and the other rank will quickly form upon it, but if the line of Skirmishers nearest to the enemy be on the move to the rear it will form upon the already retired and halted line.

Relieve Skirmishers.

On this sound the Supports will extend and form four horses’ lengths in rear of the Skirmishers. The leader of the supports will then give the word “Ready,” upon which the leader of the old Skirmishers will give “About” and trot to the rear with his sword raised, the old Skirmishers will gallop in upon him, and he will form up as a support in rear of the centre of the new line of Skirmishers.

The new line takes up the old ground by advancing four horses’ lengths directly its front is cleared by the old Skirmishers.

Changes of Front or Position are executed by the leaders of the Skirmishers and the Second Leader giving a moving base and circling gradually into the required position, carefully watching the flanks and regulating their movements so as to give them time to come round. The flank which makes the wheel will increase its pace and circle round into the new position.

In changes of front “Right on Left back” the leader of the Skirmishers and the Second Leader will give the required base, upon which the Skirmishers will align themselves as quickly as possible, the refused flank going about and the advance flank wheeling up.

Skirmishers in.

When the trumpet sounds “Skirmishers in” each troop leader will raise his sword and commence moving in upon the main body at a trot. They, or he, will exercise his judgment to select such a point or points of entry through the line of battle as will least interfere with its immediate effective action. The men of his troop will return carbines, draw swords, and
gallop in as quickly as possible upon him, forming in their proper places as they come up.

When the troop leader finds that his men are collected he will increase his pace and get as rapidly as he can through the general line and join the main body to which he may belong, rallying usually upon the Second Squadron.

The supports move in at once, also selecting the best point of entry.

Skirmishers covering the front of a single regiment should invariably pass round the flank or flanks when called in.

Rally.

During an advance, and when Skirmishers are no longer required, it is sometimes convenient to rally Skirmishers upon the supports without calling in the latter. On the sound "Rally," the Skirmishers will act as in "Skirmishers in," but will form up on the supports, the latter not coming in, but still acting in front of the main body.

General Observations.

It is recommended that a few well trained men should be selected, and one be placed on the flanks of the rear rank of each troop who might go out as scouts when required, in place of Skirmishers, for the purpose of examining the ground in front or Flanks of the Line.

To lay down precise rules for the guidance of Skirmishers with reference to the main body's movements is not possible. Being nearest to the enemy the movements of the Skirmishers are an index to the main body of those of the enemy; frequent communication should exist between the Officer commanding Skirmishers and the main body. The Commander of the latter if about to make a change of front or position should either by message or by the trumpet make it known to the Skirmishers.

If the main body make a continued movement to a Flank the sound Right or Left Turn will place the Skirmishers in a corresponding position. The sounds Right or Left Shoulders Forward will cause them to conform to a small change of front less than the quarter circle, but if a change is made of the quarter circle it is better to send out fresh Skirmishers to the new front and recall the old ones, who may conveniently form to the Flank nearest the former front.
The following is recommended to be inserted under the head of Advanced Guards.

"The Advanced Guards should always be ready on the march to extend in skirmishing order when open country occurs, or to line the banks of rivers, to protect the passage of the main body over fords or bridges."

Section XV.

ADVANCE GUARDS, REAR GUARDS, AND PATROLS.

Advance Guards and Patrols on the flanks are, in all situations, essential to protect the March of an Army; and no Corps, Column, or detached Body whatever is to neglect this military precaution for its safety.

1. The strength of Advanced Guards should be in proportion to the body from which they are detached; for instance, one Troop may be generally considered as sufficient for three Squadrons.

2. The Advanced Guard usually marches about two hundred or two hundred and fifty yards in front of the Column, but the distance must entirely depend on circumstances. The Advanced Guard detaches a party of about one-third to its front; this party sends forward a smaller one, and from this last two men precede the whole; on the same principle, small Parties and Patrols are also detached from the main body to each Flank, where the nature of the country makes it advisable.

3. The duties of these Parties and Patrols are, to take advantage of every height to look round them, to examine the neighbouring villages and roads, and make every possible inquiry from the Peasantry on these subjects, and also respecting the Movements of the Enemy, sending in reports from time to time.

4. In passing through villages where there is a chance of opposition from the inhabitants, or of the Enemy having concealed a party of Infantry in the houses, the front rank should file along one side of the street, and the rear rank along the other, each watching the windows on the opposite side.

5. The distances of the Patrols and flank Parties from each other, and from the main body, must depend on the nature of the country, whether open or enclosed, flat or mountainous. Provided they take proper care to preserve a communication to
the rear, they will, in the day-time, best attain their object by penetrating as much as two or three miles from their main body. By night and in foggy weather, or in a woody and enclosed country, the distances must be diminished according to the necessity of the case. As a general rule, an Advanced Guard should constantly be in communication with, or in sight of, the party from whence it is detached.

6. Rear Guards, in cases of retreat, are formed on the same principles, in respect to disposition and number, as Advanced Guards on a march to the front; but their duties are confined to preventing the surprise of the rear. Detachments from the Rear Guard must never entirely lose sight of the party to which they belong.

Section XVI.

PICQUETS.

Picquets are detachments sent out from an Army in Quarters, Camp, or Bivouac, to the front, flanks, or rear, for the purpose of security against surprise.

1. The Officer in command of a Picquet must, before marching, ascertain that he has a proper supply of ammunition, provisions, and corn, &c. If his Picquet consists of Detachments, he should get a list of the men, and to what corps they belong; and above all, he should thoroughly understand every particular of the instructions and orders that are given him, asking questions on every point which requires explanation.

2. In marching to the station prescribed him, he should carefully observe the roads and country, obtaining all possible information from peasants, and others, as to what Villages, Roads, Rivers, Rivulets, Bridges, &c., are near, and in what direction. If it is the first time the post is occupied, he will, on his arrival, select for his main body the spot most secure for retreat, and best screened from the view of the enemy; the rear of a small Hill or Copse, a Defile, or Bridge is generally a good post for a Picquet. If the enemy is near, no fire must be lighted, and the men must be kept ready to act on the shortest notice. When a fire can be allowed it should be placed behind some sheltered spot in the rear, and a few men must only go to it in turn.

3. The Officer first posts a small Non-commissioned Officer's party some hundred paces in front of the Picquet. These are
to keep all the Vedettes in sight, and repeat their signals; and, if their views in some cases be obstructed, they detach one or two men still further on for that purpose.

4. Proceeding forward, the Officer then posts his chain of Vedettes, by two and two (an old soldier with a young one if possible), in such a way as best to observe all the avenues by which the Enemy can approach; they must be only so far apart as is consistent with their having a clear view of those on their right and left, and they must communicate by the flanks, with the Vedettes of the adjoining Picquets, to which the Officer, as soon as he has posted his men, sends Patrols; and, until their return, no man is to be dismounted. The Vedettes must receive distinct instructions not to allow any one, whether flag of truce, deserter, or peasant, to approach them from the Enemy, until they have made the signal for a Patrol to come up and receive them; neither is any person to be permitted to pass the outposts from their own rear.

5. The Officer of a Flank Picquet must be particularly on the alert on his exposed flank, placing Vedettes, and patrolling in that direction accordingly.

6. When any party from the Enemy is seen approaching, the Vedettes circle their horses at a walk, trot, or gallop, according to the number of the approaching force. If it be cavalry only, the Vedettes both circle to the right; if Infantry, both to the left; if Cavalry and Infantry, one to the right and the other to the left. This circle must be taken up by all the Vedettes within sight, whether belonging to the same Picquet or not. They must avoid the last signal, of firing, unless in cases of sudden and decided attack, or in the case of persons refusing to answer them when they have challenged twice.

7. At night the Vedettes are withdrawn nearer to the main body, and, if they have been on high ground, should be placed at the foot of the descent, as they can then best see any one approaching from above.

8. At sunset, and one hour before day, the whole should be mounted for an hour at least.

9. As the night closes, the Picquet must change its ground a short distance to the right or left, and the Vedettes should be visited by frequent Patrols, some of whom should occasionally dismount, and advance a short distance beyond the Vedettes, to listen, with their ears close to the ground, for any noise, even such as the barking of dogs, indicating that Troops are in motion. In foggy or snowy weather, the same precautions must be used by day as by night.
10. Immediately on a Picquet being threatened with an attack, the Officer must send to the rear the best intelligence he has time to give, as to the nature and force of the attacking Enemy.

11. A Picquet, when driven in, must retire as slowly as possible, taking every advantage of the road or ground, to check the Enemy's advance.

12. Any movement observed on the part of the Enemy, or any important circumstance, should be instantly communicated to the adjoining Picquets.

13. If a man deserts, the Picquet must shift its ground, and the fact be instantly reported.

14. Upon the relief of a Picquet it should never be marched off until the new one is completely established in all its posts. The Officer relieved must always accompany the one who relieves him in changing the Vedettes, and should give him every information he has been able to collect.

15. When a Picquet is attacked in force, those on its flanks should afford it all possible support.

16. If a Picquet is unluckily surprised, and cut off from its retreat, it by no means follows that a surrender is necessary. An Officer of activity and intelligence may, either by a bold advance into the enemy's country, and making a detour, regain the Army by another road, or may succeed, by a resolute effort, in breaking his way through the force by which he has been cut off.

17. All Reports and Intelligence should be sent in writing, and the exact hour specified: and every Officer employed upon Outpost Duty should be provided with a Map, a Telescope, a Pocket Compass, Pen, Pencil, Ink, and Paper, and a Watch. Some knowledge of the bearings of the principal Stars and Constellations will often be of great assistance in getting a knowledge of the direction of different Roads, Rivers, &c.

18. It is of the utmost consequence, in reporting the quarter where any movement of the Enemy is observed, distinctly to specify our Right or Left, or the Enemy's Right or Left.

19. Picquets must never for an instant forget that the honour and safety of the whole Army frequently depends upon their alertness and vigilance.

20. It cannot be too strongly impressed upon Officers in command of Picquets or Patrols, or even of larger detachments, that the temptation of personal distinction ought never to lead them into neglect or forgetfulness of the main objects of the duty intrusted to them, whether as regards the security
of the Army, or the obtaining useful information respecting
the Enemy. These objects should, in either case, supersede
all personal consideration; and an Officer who is not fully
convinced of this can never be deserving of confidence in the
Field.

Section XVII.

FLAGS OF TRUCE.

When an Officer is sent with a Flag of Truce, he must
make every remark he can as to the situation and security of
the Enemy's post. He must direct the Trumpeter who goes
with him to sound constantly as he approaches the Enemy's
Vedettes. A Flag of Truce from the Enemy is always to be
received with civility, but no conversation relative to the
Armies must be allowed. If there is any order for the Bearer
of a Flag of Truce to be conducted to Head Quarters, he must
be blindfolded till his arrival there.

Section XVIII.

FORAGING.

When foraging in the vicinity of the Enemy, a covering
party, in the proportion of about One Division to each Squadron,
will be ordered for the protection of the Foragers. The foraging
should be carried on with regularity and order, but as expedi-
tiously as possible. The Foragers should invariably take their
swords with them. It is usual on service, and particularly
when near the Enemy, for the old Picquet to forage, covered
by the new Picquet, but not until the latter has been completely
established on its post.
Section XIX.

ALARM POSTS.

In taking up quarters, whether at home or abroad, the Alarm Post must be made known to every man before he is billeted off.

On service, the Alarm Post should generally be in the rear of the Village, unless there happens to be some Bridge or Defile in front, through which an enemy may approach, and where it would be of advantage to make a stand.

It cannot be too much impressed on Officers of all ranks that it is as much their own interest as their duty, to behave kindly to the inhabitants wherever they are quartered; and when detached Cavalry (as often must happen on service) are under the necessity of providing themselves with food and forage by requisition, from the people, there can be no excuse for its being done irregularly or offensively, or without proper receipts being given. If possible, the presence of the Chief Person of the place should be always desired on these occasions.

THE END.
LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[3766.—1500.—7/69.]
[P. 668.—1500.—7/69.]
MILITARY BOOKS, published by Authority—continued.

ARMY EQUIPMENT.
Prepared at the Topographical and Statistical Department, War Office.
Colonel Sir Henry James, R.E., F.R.S., &c., Director.

PART I.—CAVALRY.
Compiled by Lieut. H. M. Hoziere, 2nd Life Guards, F.C.S., F.G.S.,
Topographical Staff.
Royal 8vo., cloth boards. Price 4s.

PART IV.—MILITARY TRAIN.
Compiled by Lieut. H. M. Hoziere, 2nd Life Guards, F.C.S., F.G.S.,
Topographical Staff.
Royal 8vo., cloth boards. Price 2s. 6d.

PART V.—INFANTRY.
Compiled by Captain Martin Petrie, Topographical Staff.
Royal 8vo., cloth boards. Price 5s., with Plates.

PART VI.—COMMISSARIAT.
Compiled by Lieut. H. M. Hoziere, 2nd Life Guards, F.C.S., F.G.S.,
Topographical Staff.
Royal 8vo., cloth boards. Price 1s. 6d.

PART VII.—HOSPITAL SERVICE.
Compiled by Captain Martin Petrie, Topographical Staff.
Price 5s., with Plates.

REGULATIONS FOR THE VOLUNTEER FORCE.
Dated War Office, 18th September 1863.
212 pp. demy 8vo., cloth boards. Price 1s. 6d.

MANUAL OF DRILL FOR MOUNTED RIFLE VOLUNTEERS,
OR VOLUNTEER IRREGULAR CAVALRY.
By Lieut.-Col. J. Bower and Captain 1st Hants Mounted Rifle Volunteers.
Demy 12mo., cloth boards. Price 1s. 6d.

REGULATIONS APPLICABLE TO THE CORPS OF YEOMANRY CAVALRY.
26 pp. demy 8vo. Price 6d.
MILITARY BOOKS, published by Authority—continued.

REPORT ON VARIOUS EXPERIMENTS
Carried out under the Direction of the Ordnance Select Committee relative to

THE PENETRATION OF IRON ARMOUR PLATES BY STEEL SHOT.

By CAPTAIN W. H. NOBLE, M.A., Royal Artillery, Associate Member Ordnance Select Committee.

To which is added a Memorandum on

THE PENETRATION OF IRON-CLAD SHIPS BY STEEL AND OTHER PROJECTILES.

Foolscap folio, with Plans. Price 2s. 7d.

ANNUAL REPORT OF THE INSTRUCTION CARRIED ON AT THE SCHOOLS OF MUSKETRY AT HYTHE AND FLEETWOOD,
And of the Progress of Musketry Instruction in the Army, during the Year ending 31st March 1868.
Price 2s.

REPORTS OF THE YEARS ENDING MARCH 31, 1862, 1863, 1864, 1865, 1866, AND 1867.
Price 2s.

Royal 8vo. Price 1s. each.

LONDON:
Printed under the Superintendence of H.M. Stationery Office, and sold by
W. CLOWES & SONS, 14, Charing Cross; HARRISON & SONS, 59, Pall Mall;
W. H. ALLEN & Co., 13, Waterloo Place; W. MITCHELL, Charing Cross;
And LONGMAN & Co., and TRÜBNER & Co., Paternoster Row;
Also by A. & C. BLACK, Edinburgh; D. ROBERTSON, 90, St. Vincent Street, Glasgow;
ALEX. THOM, Abbey Street, and E. PONSONBY, Grafton Street, Dublin.
MILITARY BOOKS, published by Authority—continued.

NOW READY,
In demy 16mo., leather, with clasp. Price 2s.
PROFUSELY ILLUSTRATED.
SAPPERS' MANUAL,
Compiled for the Use of
ENGINEER VOLUNTEER CORPS.
By Captain W. A. Frankland, R.E.

NOW READY,
540 pp. royal 8vo. Price 5s.
ILLUSTRATED BY NEARLY TWO HUNDRED WOOD-CUTS.
A TREATISE ON
THE TRANSPORT OF SICK AND WOUNDED TROOPS.

BY
DEPUTY INSPECTOR-GENERAL T. LONGMORE, C.B.,
HONORARY SURGEON TO HER MAJESTY;
PROFESSOR OF MILITARY SURGERY IN THE ARMY MEDICAL SCHOOL;
ETC. ETC. ETC.

LONDON:
Printed under the Superintendence of H.M. Stationary Office,
AND SOLD BY
W. Clowes & Sons, 14, Charing Cross; Harrison & Sons, 59, Pall Mall;
W. H. Allen & Co., 12, Waterloo Place; W. Mitchell, Charing Cross;
And Longman, Hurst, Rees, Orme, and Brown, Paternoster Row;
Also by A. & C. Black, Edinb.; and Alex. Thom, Dublin.

ALEX. THOM, Dublin.